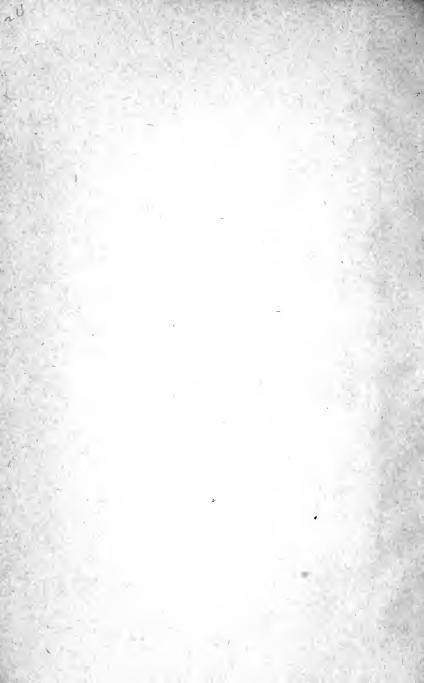


to aid in replacing the loss caused by The disastrous Fire of February the 14th 1890 through the Committee formed in The Old Country Townto University Library Former feeld Eg





A NEW EASY LATIN PRIMER.

F. HAVERFIELD, + LANCING COLLEGE + SHOREHAM, SUSSEX LaL.Gr F 1853n

A NEW EASY LATIN PRIMER.

BY

REV. EDMUND FOWLE,

AMESBURY HOUSE SCHOOL, BICKLEY, KENT,

AUTHOR OF

"Short and Easy Latin Book," "Short and Easy Greek Book,"
"Gods and Heroes," "Schoolboy's First Book of Easy Poetry,"
etc., etc., etc.

LONDON:

SWAN SONNENSCHEIN, LE BAS & LOWREY,
PATERNOSTER SQUARE.
1886.



As boys are not over-careful in the use of Books, and as this New Easy Latin Primer should be constantly in the learner's hands, the several parts have been issued separately at One Shilling each.

Part I. Accidence.

" II. Syntax.

" III. Irregular Latin Verbs.

,, IV. Difficiliora—taking in the Gender and Peculiarities of the Substantive, etc., etc.

PREFACE.

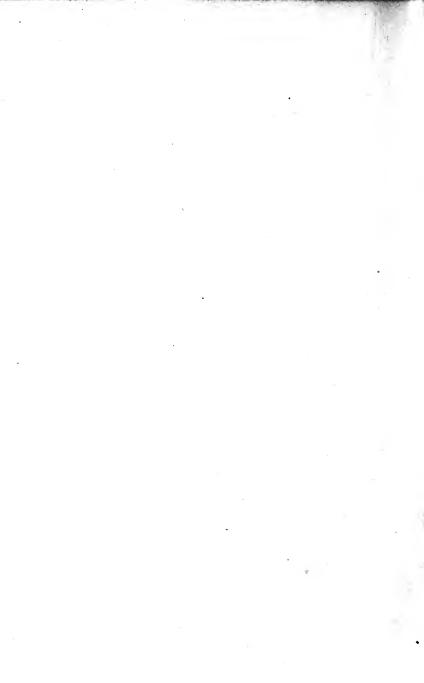
This little Book is an attempt to supply a want that is still universally felt—a Latin Primer sufficiently full and yet sufficiently easy for our Preparatory and for the Lower Forms of our Public Schools.

It has been thought well to follow in many particulars the lines of the P. S. L. P.

AMESBURY HOUSE, BICKLEY, KENT.

January 13th, 1886.

*** Certain matter will be found repeated in these pages, but this has been found necessary, so that each of the four parts, when published separately, may be complete in itself.



PART I. ACCIDENCE.



PART I. ACCIDENCE.

CONTENTS.

	P.	AGE	PAGE
1.	Latin Alphabet	11	29. Participles 37
2.	Parts of Speech	12	30. Regular Verbs Conjugated 37
3.	Gender, Number, Case .	12	31. Tenses of Regular Verbs
4.	Parts of Speech explained	13	(Active) 38
5.	Stem and Root	14	32. Tenses of Regular Verbs
6.	Substantives	15	(Passive) 40
7.	Declension of Substan-		33. Imperative Mood (Active
	tives	16	and Passive) 42
8.	Gender of the Substan-		34. Infinitive Mood (Active
	tive	18	and Passive) 43
	Adjectives	20	35. Gerunds, Supines, Parti-
	Adjectives-Three Term	21	ciples 44
	Adjectives-Two Term	21	36. Irregular or Anomalous
	Adjectives-One Term	21	Verbs 45
13.	Notes on the Adjectives .	22	37. Tenses in full of Irregular
	Numeral Adjectives	22	Verbs 46
	Numerals	23	38. Deponent Verbs 48
16.	Numerals (in full)	24	39. Deponent Verb in full
17.	Comparison of Adjectives.	26	(Utor) 50
18.	Irregular Comparisons .	27	40. Impersonal Verbs 52
	Notes on Comparison	28	41. Defective Verbs 54
20.	Comparison of Adverbs .	2 8	42. Quasi-Passive and Semi-
	Pronouns	29	Deponent Verbs 55
	Declension of Pronouns .	30	43. Derived Verbs 56
23.	Compounds of Relative		44. Adverbs 57
	Pronouns, etc	31	45. Prepositions 58
24.	The Verb "Sum"	32	46. Conjunctions 59
25.	The Verb	34	47. Interjections 59
26.	Transitive and Intransi-		48. General Rules for the
	tive Verbs	34	Quantities of Latin
	Stem of the Verb	3 5	Words (Prosody) 60
28.	Regular Verbs	36	49. Epitome 62
			0



NEW EASY LATIN PRIMER.

PART I. ACCIDENCE.

LATIN ALPHABET, etc.

The Latin Alphabet is the same as the English without w.

The letters have also two forms like the English: (a) the Capital or Ancient; (b) the Small or Modern.

The Alphabet also, as in English, is divided into:

(a) Vowels, (b) Consonants.

- a. Vowels sound by themselves, and are: a, e, i, o, u, y.
- b. The Consonants must be joined with Vowels to have any sound; as, b (be), c (ce), f (ef).

The Consonants again are subdivided into

- 1. Mutes. b, c, d, g, k, p, q, t.
- 2. Nasals. m, n.
- 3. Liquids. l, r.
- 4. Spirants. f, h, j, s, v.
- 5. Double. x, z, made up of cs, ds.

There are six Diphthongs (two vowels with a combined sound): α , α , au, in common use; ei, eu, ui, seldom used.

Latin is spelt by syllables, the quantity of which is long -, short \vee , or doubtful \vee .

The stops in Latin are the same as those used in English.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

The Parts of Speech are eight.

 Substantive Adjective Pronoun Verb 	declined.	5. Adverb6. Preposition7. Conjunction8. Interjection	undeclined.
---	-----------	---	-------------

The Substantive, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb change their meaning by their endings. These changes are called *Flexions*, and in making these changes Nouns are said to be *declined*, Verbs *conjugated*. The other parts of speech, sometimes called Particles, have no flexions.

GENDER, NUMBER, CASE.

1. The Noun consists of Substantive, Adjective, and Pronoun. These have for the most part Gender, Number, and Case. There are

Three Genders:

(a) Masculine, (b) Feminine, (c) Neuter.

Two Numbers:

(a) Singular, a table; (b) Plural, tables.

Six Cases, known in English by their signs, in Latin by their endings or flexions.

Nom. Answers Who or what?

Voc. Used in speaking to persons.

Acc. Answers Whom or what?

Gen. ,, Of whom, of what, whose?

Dat. ,, To or for whom or what?

Abl. ,, By, with, or from whom, or what?

PARTS OF SPEECH EXPLAINED.

- 1. The Noun Substantive is the name of anything; as, a pen, Cæsar, Corinth. Names of persons and places are Proper Nouns—all others are Common Nouns.
- 2. The Noun Adjective is joined with a Substantive, to show the quality of the Substantive. Hence it is said to qualify a Substantive.—A good king; a bad pen.
- 3. The Pronoun is sometimes used instead of (pro) a noun. Hence its name. Sometimes it qualifies a Noun—This boy is the son of that good gentleman, and he is a good boy himself.
 - 4. The Verb tells us
 - (a) What a thing or person is.—The boy is good.
 - (b) What a thing or person does.—The boy loves.
 - (c) What a thing or person suffers, i.e. what is being done to one.—The boy is loved.
- 5. The Adverb is added to a Verb or Adjective, or another Adverb, to qualify its meaning; as, The boy runs quickly.
- 6. The Preposition—from præ and pono, to place before, is placed before a Noun, to mark its relation to another word; as, The boy was hurt by the dog. The boy is without knowledge.
- 7. The Conjunction (from cum, together, and jungo, to join) joins together words and clauses; as, The boys and girls. Winter or summer. The dog bit the cat and ran away.
- 8. The Interjection (a word as it were thrown in among other words, from inter, among, and jacio, to throw) is an exclamation—Lo! it thunders!

STEM AND ROOT.

STEM.

The Stem of a word has been defined as "that part on which the changes of flexion are based," i.e., it is that part of the word which remains after the variable endings have been taken away.

In Nouns the Stem is found by throwing away rum from the Genitive Plural of Declensions I., II., V., and um from the Genitive Plural of Declensions III., IV. Thus

The	Stem	of	Mensa is $MensA$.	1	The S	tem of	Nubes is NubI.
,,	11		Dominus is DominO.		"	11	Gradus is GradU.
,,	,,		Lapis is LapiD.		,,	,,	Dies is DiE.

But before a Noun can be declined, when the last letter of the Stem is a vowel, as in mensa, domino, nubi, gradu, die, this vowel must be cast off, and the case-endings can then be added to what remains, which is called the Clipt Stem.

For all practical purposes the part of the Stem needful for declining a Substantive can be found by throwing away the Genitive Singular termination of the five declensions.

ROOT.

The Root of a word must not be confounded with its Stem. It is really that part which kindred words (words of one family) have in common. Thus in the words acies, acus, acuo, the common root is ac, sharp, but their Stems would be respectively acie, acu, acu.

SUBSTANTIVES.

A Noun Substantive is the name of anything; as, a pen, Casar, Corinth.

There are five Declensions of Substantives, known by the ending of the Genitive case.

1. æ (diphthong), Mensa, mensæ.

3. is, Nubes, nubis.

2. i, Dominus, domini. 4. ūs, Gradus, gradūs.

5. ei, Res, rei.

NOTES ON THE SUBSTANTIVES.

Peculiarities of the Substantives are given at length (pp. 168-183). We need only give here two or three simple notes.

- 1. Nom. and Voc. cases are alike in both numbers, excepting some of those of the Second Declension; as, dominus, Voc., domine; filius, Voc., fili.
- 2. In Neuter Nouns the Nom., Voc., and Acc. are alike in both numbers, and in the plural they end in a.
- 3. Some words of the Second Declension in er keep the e throughout; as, puer, pueri: some drop it; as, magister, magistri.
- 4. In the Third Declension note should be taken of nubes, nubis, which does not increase in the Genitive case, and lapis, lapidis, which does. Those which increase in the Genitive Singular have their Genitive Plural in um instead of ium, with exceptions.
- 5. Words of the Third Declension have in the nominative various terminations (or endings), as nubes, lapis, opus, mare. All other cases depend on the Genitive singular.

The following Substantives are declined (see over):

Mensa, mensæ (f.), a table.
Dominus, domini, (m.), a lord.
Magister, magistri, (m.), a master.
Regnum, regni (n.), a kingdom.
Nubes, nubis (f.), a cloud.

Lapis, lapidis (m.), a stone. Opus, operis (n.), a work. Mare, maris (n.), the sea. Gradus, gradūs (m.), a step. Genu, genus (n.), a knee.

Res, rei (f.), a thing.

DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

FIRST DECLENSION.

S. N. Mensă (f)	$a\ table$	P. N. Mensæ (f.)
V. Mensă	$O\ table$	V. Mensæ
A. Mensam	table	A. Mensas
G. Mensæ	$of\ a\ table$	G. Mensärum
D. Mensæ	to or for a table	D. Mensis

of tables to or for tables by, with or from, A. Mensā A. Mensis by, with or from, a table

SECOND DECLENSION.

D. T. Domingo (n	1., 00 00.00	
V. Domine	$O\ Lord$	l v
A. Dominum	lord	A
G. Domini	of a $lord$	G
D. Domino	to or for a lord	r
A. Domino	by, with or from,	A
	a lord	
S. N. Magister (m	.)a master	P. N
V. Magister	O master	V
A. Magistrum	master	A
G. Magistri	of a master	G
D. Magistro	to or for a master	D
A. Magistro	by, with or from,	A
	a master	
S. N. Regnum (n.	.) a kingdom	P. N
V. Regnum	O kingdom	v
A. Regnum	kingdom	\mathbf{A}
G. Regni	of a kingdom	G
D. Regno	to or for a kingd:	D
A. Regno	by, with or from,	A
	a kingdom	
	-	

S. N. Dominus (m.) a lord

tablesP. N. Domini (m.) lords 7. Domini O lords A. Dominos lordsG. Dominörum of lords D. Dominis to or for lords A. Dominis by, with or from, lordsN. Magistri (m.) masters . Magistri O masters . Magistros mastersd. Magistrorum of masters). Magistris to or for masters . Magistris by, with or from, masters . Regna (n.) kingdoms . Regna O kingdoms . Regna kingdoms . Regnörum of kingdoms . Regnis to or for kingdoms . Regnis by, with or from, kingdoms

tables O tables

tables

THIRD DECLENSION.				
S. N. Nubes (f.)	$a\ cloud$	P. N. Nubes (f.)	clouds	
V. Nubes	$O\ cloud$	V. Nubes	$O\ clouds$	
A. Nubem	cloud	A. Nubes	clouds	
G. Nubis	$of\ a\ cloud$	G. Nubium	of clouds	
D. Nubi	to or for a cloud	D. Nubibus	to or for clouds	
A. Nube	by, with or from,	D. Nubibus	by, with or from,	
	a cloud		clouds	

THIRD DECLENSION.

S. N. Lapis (m.)	a stone ·	P. N. Lapides (m.) stones
V. Lapis	O stone	V. Lapides	O stones
A. Lapidem	stone	A. Lapides	stones
G. Lapidis	of a stone	G. Lapidum	$of\ stones$
D. Lapidi	to or for a stone	D. Lapidibus	to or for stones
A. Lapide	by, with or from, a stone	A. Lapidibus	by, with or from, stones
S. N. Opus (n.)	a work	P. N. Opera (n.)	works
V. Opus	O work	V. Opera	O works
A. Opus	work	A. Opera	works
G. Operis	of a work	G, Operum	of works
D. Operi	to or for a work	D. Operibus	to or for works
A. Opere	by, with or from, a work	A. Operibus	by, with or from, works
S. N. Mare (n.)	the sea	P. N. Maria (n.)	the sea
V. Mare	O sea	V, Maria	O seas
A. Mare	the sea	A. Maria	$the\ seas$
G. Maris	of the sea	G. Marium	$of\ the\ seas$
D. Mari	to or for the sea	D. Marĭbus	to or for the seas
A. Mari	by, with or from,	A. Maribus	by, with or from,
	FOURTH T	ECLENSION.	

S. N.	Gradus (m.)	$a\ step$	P. N.	Gradus (m.)	steps
v.	Gradus	O step	V.	Gradūs	$O\ steps$
A.	Gradum	$a\ step$	A.	Gradūs	steps
G.	Gradūs	of a step	G.	Graduum	$of\ steps$
D.	Gradui	to or for a step	D.	Gradibus	to or for steps
A.	Gradu	by, with or from	A.	Gradibus	by, with or from,
S. N.	Genu (n.)	a knee	P. N.	Genua (n.)	knees
v.	Genu	O knee	v.	Genua	O knees
		O knee a knee			O knees knees
A.			A.	Genua	
A. G.	Genu	a knee	A. G.	Genua Genua	knees
A. G. D.	Genu Genüs	a knee of a knee	A. G. D.	Genua Genua Genuum	knees of knees

FIFTH DECLENSION.

S. N. Res (f.)	$a\ thing$	P. N. Res	things
V. Res	$a\ thing$	V. Res	$O\ things$
A. Rem	$a\ thing$	A. Res	things
G. Rĕi	of a $thing$	G. Rērum	of things
D. Rĕi	to, or for \a thing	D. Rēbus	to or for things
A. Re	by, with or from,	A. Rēbus	by, with or from

GENDER OF THE SUBSTANTIVE.

There are three Genders; a Substantive must be either (a) Masculine, (b) Feminine, (c) Neuter. Some also are Common, i.e. Masculine or Feminine.

We give two common General Rules:

I. Certain classes of things are of certain Genders.

Masculine. Males. People. Mountains (most).

Months. Winds. Rivers (most).

Feminine. Females. Countries (most).
Islands. Cities and Trees (most).

Neuter. Indeclinable Nouns; as, fas, nefas, nihil.

Common. Words applicable to either sex; as,
Conjux, husband or wife.
Hostis, an enemy.

II. Genders of Substantives are in a general way also known by the terminations in each Declension.

First. Feminine, in a and e; Masculine in as and es.

Second. Masculine, in us and er; Neuter in um.

Third. (a) Masculine terminations: o, or, os, er, es, increasing in gen., ex (not x).

(b) Feminine terminations: is, as, aus, a (not ex) s preceded by a consonant, es not increasing in genitive.

(c) Neuter terminations: ar, ur, us, c, a, t, l, e, n.

Fourth. Masculine in us; Neuter in u.

Fifth. Feminine.

But to these rules there are many exceptions (see pp. 158-167.)

GENDER OF THE SUBSTANTIVE.

EXCEPTIONS.

DECLENSION I.

Nouns in a denoting Males, are Masculine; as, poeta, a poet.

So also are

Hadria, Adriatic Sea.

Scurra, a buffoon.

DECLENSION II.

A few in us are Feminine:

Alvus, the belly.

Arctus, the Bear (constellation).

Carbasus, fine flax.
Colus, a distaff.

ellation).

Humus, the ground. Pampinus, vine-leaf.

Pirus, a pear-tree. (a) Sapphirus, a sapphire. (b)

Vannus, a winnowing fan.

A few in us are Neuter:

Pelagus, the sea. Virus, poison.

Vulgus, the common people (generally).

DECLENSION III.

Exceptions are numerous (see pp. 158-167).

DECLENSION IV.

A few in us are Feminine:

Acus, a needle.
Anus, an old woman.
Domus, a house.

Domus, a house. Idus (pl.), the Ides.

Manus, the hand.

Nurus, a daughter-in-law. Porticus, a portico.

Socrus, a mother-in-law.

Tribus, a tribe.

DECLENSION V.

All are Feminine except dies, which is common in the Singular, but Masculine in the Plural, and meridies, midday, which is Masculine.

⁽a) And names of plants.

⁽b) And names of jewels.

ADJECTIVES.

A Noun Adjective qualifies a Substantive, as-

A good boy. A tall tree. A happy child. A bright day. Cold weather. A sad state,

Adjectives are divided into three Classes; those which have in the Nominative

- 1. Three terminations. 2. Two terminations. 3. One termination.
 - 1. Adjectives of three terminations end in

us, a, um, as bonus, bona, bonum, good. er, a, um, as tener, tenera, tenerum, tender. er, is, e, as acer, acris, acre, sharp.

2. Adjectives of two terminations end in

is, e, as tristis, triste, sad. or, us, as melior, melius, better.

3. Adjectives of one termination have various endings; as,

Felix, happy.
Ingens, immense.
Præstans, excellent.

The following sample Adjectives are declined;

Bonus bons. good. bonumTener tenera tenerum tender. Acer acris acre sharp. Tristis triste sad. Melior melius better.

Felix happy.

ADJECTIVES OF THREE TERMINATIONS.

Masc. Fem. Neut. S. N. Bonus bonă bonum V. Bone bona bonum A. Bonum bona bonum G. Boni bonæ boni D. Bono bonæ bono A. Bono bonã bono	Masc. Fem. Neut. P. N. Boni bonæ bona V. Boni bonæ bona A. Bonos bonas bona G. Bonōrum -ārum -ōrum D. Bonis A. Bonis all genders.
S. N. Tener tenera -ërum V. Tener tenera -erum A. Tenerum teneram -erum G. Teneri teneræ teneri D. Tenero teneræ tenero A. Tenero tenera tenero	P. N. Teneri teneræ tenera V. Teneri teneræ tenera A. Teneros teneras tenera G. Tenerōrum -rārum -rōrum D. Teneris A. Teneris all genders.
S. N. Acer acris acre V. Acer acris acre A. Acrem acrem acre G. Acris D. Acri A. Acri Ball genders	P. N. Acres acres acria V. Acres acres acria A. Acres acres acria G. Acrium D. Acribus A. Acribus all genders

ADJECTIVES OF TWO TERMINATIONS.

M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
S. N. Tristis	triste	P. N. Tristes	tristĭa
V. Tristis	triste	V. Tristes	tristĭa
A. Tristem	triste	A. Tristes	tristĭa
G. Tristis		G. Tristium	
	all genders	D. Tristibus	all genders
A. Tristi	8	A. Tristibus	0
11. 11100.			
S. N. Melĭor	melius	P. N. Meliores	meliōra
V. Melior	melius	V. Meliores	meliora
A. Meliōrem		A. Meliores	meliora
G. Meliōris)	G. Meliorum)
	all genders	D. Melioribus	all genders
		A. Melioribus	3)
D. Meliori A. Meliore (i	all genders		

ADJECTIVES OF ONE TERMINATION.

S. N. Felix (m. f. n.)		
V. Felix	V. Felices	felicia
A. Felicem (m. f.) felix (n.)	A. Felices	felicia
G. Felicis	G. Felicium	
D. Felici	D. Felicibus all p	genders
A. Felici (rarely Felice)	A. Felicibus	

NOTES ON THE ADJECTIVE.

There are some Adjectives declined like tener, tenera, tenerum, which however drop the e, as—

Niger, nigra, nigrum, black.

There are eleven other Adjectives declined like acer. Celer keeps e before r. It has also ium in the Gen. Plural; um only when used of the ancient body-guard at Rome—Celeres, Celerum.

- 1. Alacer, lively.
- 5. Paluster, marshy.
- 8. Saluber, healthful.

- Campester, level.
 Celeber, crowded.
- 6. Pedester, pedestrian.7. Puter, rotten.
- Silvester, woody.
 Terrester, earthly.

4. Equester, equestrian.

11. Volucer, winged.

Adjectives of one termination have various endings-

rapax, rapacious.

præstans, excellent.

ingens, immense.

NUMERAL OR PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

There are some Adjectives which are however declined like bonus or tener or niger, excepting that they have no Voc. and make the Gen. Sing. to end in ius and the Dative in i. Alius also makes aliud instead of alium in the Neut. Sing.

Unus, one. Solus, alone.

Uter, which (of two). Neuter, neither (of two).

Totus, whole. Ullus, any.

Alter one (of two). Nullus, none.

Alius, one (of any number).

The numeral Adjectives, duo, two; tres, three, are thus declined:

N. Duo duæ duo A. Duos (o) duas duo N. Tres tria A. Tres tria

G. Duorum -arum -o D. Duobus -abus -o

-orum G. Trium

D. Duobus -abus
A. Duobus -abus

-obus -obus D. Tribus A. Tribus

NUMERALS.

Numerals are divided into-

- 1. Cardinal numbers—those on which the other numbers hinge (cardo, a hinge); as, unus, one; duo, two.
- 2. Ordinal numerals—denoting numerical rank (ordo): primus, first; secundus, second.
- 3. Distributive numerals—giving or distributing so many apiece or at each time. Pueri scripserunt binas epistolas: The boys wrote two letters apiece.
- 4. Numeral Adverbs—denoting the number of times anything happens or is done. Puer bis locutus est:

 The boy spoke twice.

The general rule for writing compound numbers is-

- 1. In numbers less than twenty.
 - (a) Small number first, without et. Tres decem (13) (written as one word, tredecim).
 - (b) Larger number first, with et. Decem et tres (13).
 - (c) Duo de viginti (18). Unde viginti (19).
- 2. In numbers over twenty.
 - (a) Just the reverse—small number with et.

 Romulus reigned thirty-seven years: Romulus reg
 navit septem et triginta annos.
 - (b) Larger numbers without et.

To men are assigned thirty-two teeth: Dentes triceni bini viris attribuuntur.

- 3. In numbers above one hundred the larger comes first, with or without et. Centum (et) septem (107).
- 4. The thousands are expressed by prefixing the numeral adverbs to mille, as, bis mille, ter mille (chiefly in poetry); or by prefixing the cardinals to milia, as, duo milia, tria milia.

N.B.—Mille, a thousand, is an indeclinable adjective. Milia, thousands, is a neuter plural substantive, and is declined like maria; so that duo milia hominum=two thousand men.

NUMERALS.

		2	
CARDINALS.	OEDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.	ADVERBS.
1. unus, -a, -um	primus, -a, -um	singuli, -æ, -a	semel
2. duo, -æ, -o	secundus (alter)	bini, -æ, -a	bis
3. tres, -tria	tertius	terni (trini), -æ, -a	ter
4. quattuor	duartus	quaterni, -æ, -a	quater
5. quinque	quintus	quini, -æ, -a	quinquies *
6. sex	sextus	seni, -æ, -a	sexies
7. septem	septimus	septēni, -æ, -a	septies
8. octo	octavus	octoni, -æ, -a	octies
9. novem	nonus	novēni, -æ,-a	novies
10. decem	decimus	deni, -æ, -a	decies
11. undĕcim	undecimus	undēni, æ, -a	undecies
12. duodecim	duodecimus	duodeni, -æ, -a	duodecies
13. tredecim	tertius decimus	terni deni, -æ, -a	tredecies
14. quattuordecim	quartus decimus	quaterni deni, -æ,-a	quaterdecies
15. quindecim	quintus decimus	quini deni, -æ, -a	quindecies
16. sedecim	sextus decimus	seni deni, -æ, -a	sedecies
	septimus decimus	septeni deni, -æ, -a	septiesdecies
18. duodeviginti	duodevicesimus	duodeviceni, -æ, -a	duodevicies
19. undeviginti	undevicesimus	undeviceni, -æ, -a	undevicies
20. viginti	vicesimus	viceni, -æ, -a	vicies
21. unus et viginti	primus et vicesimus	", singuli, -æ, -a	semel et vicies
22. duo " "	alter ,,	" bini, -æ, -a	bis ,,
23. tres " "	tertius ",	" terni, -æ, -a	ter ,,
24. quattuor "	quartus ",	" quaterni, -æ, -a	quater ,,
25. quinque "	quintus ,,	,, quini, -æ, -a	quinquies,,
26. sex ,,	sextus "	,, seni, -æ, -a	sexies ,,
27. septem "	septimus "	" septeni, -æ, -a	septies "
28. duodetriginta	duodetricesimus	duodetriceni, -æ, -a	duodetricies
29. undetriginta	undetricesimus	undetriceni, -æ, -a	undetricies
30. triginta	tricesimus	triceni, -æ, -a	tricies
40. quadraginta	quadragesimus	quadrageni, -æ, -a	quadragies
50. quinquaginta	quinquagesimus	quinquageni, -æ, -a	quinquagies
60. sexaginta	sexagesimus	sexageni, -æ, -a	sexagies

* It may be noted that another form is quinquiens, sexiens, etc.

NUMERALS

ADVERSE. septuagies coctogies conties centies semel bis ter punquies sexies contes semel dudecies undecies undecies undecies underties trecenties trecenties septies tredoctes underties trecenties septies contingenties trecenties septies mulderties trecenties seconties seconties septingenties mulderties trecenties sexcenties sexcenties septingenties mulderties trecenties sexcenties sexcenties sexcenties sexplingenties contingenties sexplingenties contingenties sexplingenties se	decies centies millies
ADVERS AD	decie
pistributives. septuagoni,-a,-a cotogeni,-a,-a centeni, a,-a centeni singuli, in terni in quaterni in quaterni in septeni in noveni in quaterni deni in quaterni millia	decies centena millia
septuageni,-a,- octogeni,-a,-a octogeni,-a,-a centeni,-a,-a centeni,-a,-a centeni singuli, iii quini iii quini iii seni iii octoni iii noveni iii undeni iii dudeni iii quadringeni duceni ii terni dee iii gunderni ii underi iii underi iii quadringeni duceni ii treceni quadringeni octingeni sexceni septingeni octingeni octingeni sexceni septingeni octingeni sexceni septingeni octingeni sexceni septingeni octingeni octingeni octingeni octingeni octingeni sexceni septingeni octingeni	decies cer
nus nus te primus primus primus tertius quartus quartus quartus quartus septimus octavus nonus decimus undecimus tertius decimus quartus decimus quartus decimus quartus decimus tertius decimus quartus quart	decies centies millesimus
reshmus simus simus simus primus primus primus primus primus primus secuti quina quina cora nora nora nora nora nora nora nora n	ties m
septuagesimus octogesimus nonagesimus centesimus nonagesimus centesimus nonagesimus centesimus centesimus centesimus centesimus centesimus centesimus centesimus centesimus duodevi mudovic nudovic nudovic nudovic centesimus trecontesimus trecontesimus centesimus centesimus centesimus mullesimus pullesimus mullesimus centies millesimus centies millesimus centies millesimus millesimus millesimus millesimus centies millesimus centies millesimus centies millesimus	decies cer
Atts. nta nta nta nta nta numus duo tres esptem coco novem decem undecim esptemdecim duodecim i, -a, -a ii, -a, -a iii, -a, -a iiiii	millia
CARDINAIS.	s centur
CAEDINARS. 90. ceptuagritis 90. centum 100. centum 101. "et unus 103. "h quas 104. "g quas 105. "s esp 106. "s esp 107. "et ep 108. "g quas 109. "n quas 109. "n quas 1111. "n quas 1111. "n quas 1111. "g quas 1111. "g quas 1112. "g quas 1113. "g quas 1114. "g quas 1115. "g quas 1116. "g quas 1117. "g quas 1118. "g quas 1119. "g quas 1119. "g quas 1110. "g q quas 1110. "g q q q q q q q q q q q q q q q q q q	decie
CAEDITALE. 70. CARDITALE. 80. OCCOGNIAB 90. DODAGINES 100. CENTUM 101 t tunus 102 septen 103 cecem 104 quinde 105 septen 115 duodee 118 quinde 118 quinde 118 septen 119 viginti 200. ducenti, -22, -400. quadruigenti, -23, -600. quindenti, -24, -600. quindenti, -25, -600. sexcenti, -25, -600. quindenti, -25, -600. quindenti, -25, -600. sexcenti, -25, -600. quindenti, -25, -600. certum millis 2,000. duo millis	1,000,000. decies centum millia

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives have three degrees of comparison:

1. Positive.

2. Comparative.

3. Superlative.

The comparative and superlative are, ordinarily, both formed from the positive.

The comparative is formed from the positive by changing i or is of the Gen. Singular into ior; as,

Altus, high Brevis, short Gen. alti

Comp. altior brevior

The superlative is formed from the positive by changing *i* or *is* of the Gen. Singular into *issimus*; as,

Altus, high Brevis, short Gen. alti

Sup. altissimus
,, brevissimus

Adjectives however in er form their comparative regularly, but their superlative by adding rimus to the Nom. Singular; as,

Pulcher, beautiful Celer, swift

pulcherrimus celerrimus

Six Adjectives in *lis*, though they form their comparative regularly, form their superlative by changing is into *limus*; as, facilis, facilior, facilimus—

Facilis, easy. Difficilis, difficult.

Similis, like.
Dissimilis, unlike.

Gracilis, slender. Humilis, lowly.

But other Adjectives in lis are Regular; as,

Utilis

utilior

utilissimus.

IRREGULAR COMPARISONS.

Some Adjectives are compared quite irregularly, as in English, the comparative or superlative being obtained from other words long since unused or forgotten.

Bonus, good	melĭor	optĭmus
Malus, bad	pejor	pessimus
Magnus, great	major	maximus
Parvus, small	minor	minimus
Multus, much	plūs (neuter)	plurimus ,
Exterus, outward	exterior	{ extrēmus
Inferus, low	inferior	extimus infimus and imus
Supĕrus, high	superior	supremus summus
Posterus, next-after	posterior	{ postrēmus
Nequam, worthless	nequior	
Vetus, old	vetustior	veterrimus
Maturus, ripe	maturior	{ maturrimus maturissimus
Egenus, needy	egentior	egentissimus
Providus, provident	providentior	providentissimus
Dives, rich	divitior or ditior	divitissimus or ditissimus
Senex, old	{ senior, natu major }	natu maximus
Juvenis, young	{ junior, } natu minor }	natu minimus

There are a few others.

NOTES ON COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

- The comparative of multus (plus) has no masc. or fem. gender in the Singular, but full Plur., though somewhat irregular. Nom. and Acc., plures, plura; Gen., plurium; Dat. and Abl., pluribus
- 2. Adjectives in us pure (i.e. us preceded by a vowel) use for comparison magis and maxime; as, magis pius, maxime pius; except those in quus; as, antiquior, antiquior, antiquissimus, and a few others.
- Adjectives in dicus, ficus, volus change us of the positive into entior and entissimus; as, magnificus, magnificentior, magnificentissimus.
 Ocior, swifter, has no positive. Many Adjectives have a positive only.
- 4. There are some Adjectives which seem to spring from Prepositions.

Preposition. E, ex, out of Intrā, within	Positive Adj. exterus, outside	Comparative. extěríor intěríor	Superlativ e. extrēmūs (extĭmūs) intĭmūs
Săpër, above	sŭpěrůs, high above	süpěriör	sū̃prēmūs (summūs)
Infrā, below	infěrůs, deep below	infěriör	infīmūs (īmūs)
Præ, before	—	priŏr	prīmŭs, <i>first</i>
Post, after	postěrůs, next after	postĕriŏr	postrēmūs (postŭmūs)
Cĭtrā, on near side	_	c ĭtĕrĭŏ r	cītīmūs
Ultrā, beyond		ultĕrĭŏr	ultīmūs, <i>last</i>
Prope, near	_	pröpĭör	proximăs
Dē, down from	_	dētěriŏr, worse	dēterrīmūs, worst

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs are also compared.

The positive Adverb, when derived from an Adjective, ends chiefly in e and ter; as, digne, worthily; graviter, heavily; so also supply, often.

The comparative Adverb is the same as the neuter of the comparative Adjective; as, dignius, more worthily; gravius, more heavily.

The superlative Adverb is like the superlative Adjective, only it ends in e; as, dignissime, most worthily; gravissime, most heavily; sæpissime, most often.

PRONOUNS.

There are eight kinds of Pronouns.

- 1. Personal.
- 2. Reflexive.
- 3. Possessive.
- 4. Demonstrative.

- Definitive.
- 6. Relative.
- 7. Interrogative.
- 8. Indefinite.

1. Personal Pronouns are:

- 1. Ego, I.
- 2. Tu, thou.
- 2. Reflexive:

Se (sese), himself, herself, itself, themselves.

- 3. Possessive:
 - 1. Meus, mine.
 - 2. Tuus, thine.
 - 3. Suus, his, hers, etc.

- 4. Cujus, whose.
- 5. Noster, ours.
- Vester, yours.

4. Demonstrative:

- 1. Is, that, he, she, it.
- 2. Hic, this (near me).

- 3. Ille, that (yonder). 4. Iste, that (near you).

5. Definitive:

Idem, same.

Ipse, self.

6. Relative:

Qui, who or which.

7. Interrogative:

Quis, who or what?

8. Indefinite:

Quis (alıquis) any one.

DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

P. Vos P. Nos S. N. Tu S. N. Ego A. Me Nos A. Te Vos Vestrum or ī G. Mei Nostrum or i G. Tui D. Mihi D. Tibi Nobis Vobis

A. Me Nobis Vobis

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN.

N. (none)

A. Se

G. Sui

D. Sibi

A. Se

Possessive Pronouns

are declined like bonus or niger, except that meus makes mi in the Voc. Sing. Masc. Tuus and suus have no Vocative.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

- 1. Is, that, he, she, it.
- 2. Hic, this (near me).
- 3. Ille, that (yonder, near him).
- 4. Iste, that (near you).

S. N. Is A. Eum G. D. A. Eo	eă eam Ejus Ei eā	id id	P.N. Ii (ei) Eos Eorum	eæ eas earum Iis or eīs Iis or eīs	ea ea eorum
S. N. Hie A. Hunc G. D. A. Hoc	hæc hanc Hujus Huic hac	hoc hoc	Hi Hos Horum	hæ has harum His His	hæc hæc horum
S. N. Ille A. Illum G. D. A. Illo	illă illam Illĭus Illi illā	illud illud illo	Illi Illos Illōrum	illæ illas illārum Illis Illis	illa illa illōrum

Iste is declined like ille.

DEFINITIVE PROPOUNS.

Idem,	

Ipse, self.

S. N. Idem A. Eundem G. Ejusdem	eadem eandem	ĭdem idem	P.N. Eidem eadem A. Eosdem easdem G. Eorundem earundem	eädem eadem eorundem
D. Eidem A. Eodem	eādem	eodem	D. Jisdem or ĕisdem A. Jisdem or ĕisdem	

Ipse is declined like ille, excepting that in the Neut. Nom. and Acc. Sing. it makes ipsum instead of ipsud.

RELATIVE PRONOUN.

Qui, who or which.

S. N. Qui A. Quem	quæ quam	quod quod		quæ quæ quas quæ	
G.	Cujus		G. Quorum	quarum quo	rum
D.	Cui		D. Quibu	s or queis or qu	īs
A. Quo	quā	quo	A. Quibu	s <i>or</i> queis <i>or</i> qu	īs

The Interrogative Pronoun quis, and the Indefinite Pronoun quis, are mostly declined like qui, with some differences.

INTERROGAT	TIVE.	1	INDEFINI	TE.	
Singular.			Singula	r.	
Nom. Quis (quis) Qui quæ Acc. Quem quam Quem quam etc. etc. In the other forms as	quid } quid Relative.	Quĭs Quī Quem Quem etc. In the otl	quă quæ quam quam etc. her forms a	quĭd } quŏd } quĭd } quŏd } quŏd } etc. s Relative.	any one.

Indefinite Plur., Nom., Qui, quæ, quă or quæ.

COMPOUNDS OF RELATIVE, INTERROGATIVE, AND INDEFINITE.

- 1. Quisnam, quidnam; quinam, quænam, quodnam, who, what?
- Ecquis (for en-quis), ecqui, ecquid? Ecqui, ecque, ecquid, any one (Interrogative.) So numquis, siquis, etc.
- 3. Aliquis, aliqua, aliquid; Aliqui, aliqua, aliquod, some one.
- 4. Quispĭam, quæpĭam, quippĭam (quodpĭam), any one.
- 5. Quisquam, quicquam; Genitive, cujusquam, etc., any one at all.
- 6. Quidam, quædam, quiddam (quoddam), a certain one.
- 7. Quicumque, quæcumque, quodcumque, whosoever, whatsoever.
- 8. Quisquis, whosoever, quidquid, whatsoever.
- 9. Quivis, quævis, quidvis (quodvis), any you will.
- 10. Quīlībēt, quælībēt, quidlībēt (quodlībēt), any you please.
- 11. Quisque, quæque, quicque; Quisque, quæque, quodque, each. So Unusquisque, unaqueque, unumquicque (-quodque), each one.

THE VERB SUM.

Sum, es, esse, fui, futurus, to be.

Before other Verbs are given, it is necessary to know the verb sum, which is called the Auxiliary or helping Verb, because it helps to conjugate the other verbs; as Amatus sum (p. 40). But when not used as an Auxiliary Verb it is called Copulative, i.e. it "couples" the subject to the complement; as, Homo est mortalis; man is mortal.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.		IM	PERFECT.
S. Sum	I am	Eram	I was
Es	thou art	Eras	thou wast
$\mathbf{E}\mathbf{st}$	he is	Erat	he was
P. Sumus	we are	Erāmus	we were
Estis	ye are	Eratis	ye were
Sunt	they are	Erant	they were
$\mathbf{F}\mathbf{v}$	TURE SIMPLE.	F	PERFECT.
S. Ero	$I \ shall \ be$	Fui	I have been
\mathbf{Eris}	thou wilt be	Fuisti	thou hast been
Erit	he will be	Fuit	he has been
P. Erimus	we shall be	Fuimus	we have been
Eritis	ye will be	Fuistis	ye have been
Erunt	they will be.	Fuērunt	they have been.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Futu	RE PERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.	
S. Fuero Fueris Fuerit P. Fuerĭmus	I shall have been	Fueram	I had been
	thou wilt have been	Fueras	thou hadst been
	he will have been	Fuerat	he had been
	we shall have been	Fueramus	we had been
Fuerĭtis	ye will have been	Fueratis	ye had been
Fuerint	they will have been	Fuerant	they had been

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESI	ENT.	1	IMPER	FECT.		
Sim	I may be		Essem vel Forem		I	١
Sis	thou mayest b	e	Esses vel Fores		thou	pe
Sit	he may be		Esset vel Foret		he	
Simus	we may be		Essemus vel Fore	emus	we	might
Sitis	ye may be		Essetis vel Foreti	s	ye	E
Sint	they may be		Essent vel Forent	;	they,)
PERF	ECT.		PLUPE	RFECT.		
Fuerim	I may	١	Fuissem	I should	d	١
Fueris	thoù mayest	ı,	Fuisses	thou we	ouldst	=
Fuerit	he may	pe [Fuisset	he would	ld	been
Fuerĭmus	we may	sa l	Fuissemus	we show	ild	have
Fuerĭtus	ye may	ha	Fuissetis	ye wou	ld	2
Fuerint	they may	/	Fuissent	they w	ould ,	,
	Sim Sis Sit Simus Sitis Sint Perf Fuerim Fueris Fuerit Fuerfus Fuerfus Fuerfus	Sis thou mayest be sit he may be sit we may be sitis ye may be sitis ye may be sitis they may be they may be recrimed I may for their in any site of the site of t	Sim I may be Sis thou mayest be Sit he may be Sitis we may be Sitis ye may be Sitis ye may be They may be PERFECT. Fuerim I may Fueris thou mayest Fuerit he may Fuerithe we may Fueritus ye may	Sim I may be Sis thou mayest be Sit he may be Sitis we may be Sitis ye may be Sitis ye may be Sitis ye may be Sitis I they may be Sitis Ye may be Sitis Ye may be Sitis Ye may be Fuerim I may Fueris thou mayest Fuerit he may Fuerit he may Fuerit we may Fueritus ye may Signature Sesson vel Forent Essent vel Forent Essent vel Forent Essent vel Forent Essent vel Forent Fuerit Fuerit Essent vel Forent Essent vel Forent Fuerit Fuerit Essent vel Forent	Sim I may be Sis thou mayest be Sit he may be Sitis we may be Sitis ye may be Sitis ye may be Sitis ye may be Sitis ye may be Sitis I they may be Sitis Ye Foreit Sitis Ye l'oreit Sitis Y	Sim I may be Sis thou mayest be Sit he may be Sitis we may be Sitis ye may be Therrim I may Fueris thou mayest foreis thou mayest foreis the may Fuerit he may Fuerit he may Fueritus ye may Signatural foreis thou weldst foreis the would for selection for sel

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

	PRESENT.	Fur	JRE SIMPLE.
S. Es	be thou	S. Esto	thou must be
		Esto	he must be
P. Este	be ye	Estote	ye must be
		Sunto	they must be

VERB INFINITE.

Present and Imperfect	Esse	to be
Perfect and Pluperfect	Fuisse	to have been
Future Future Participle	Fore <i>vel</i> Futurus esse Futurus	to be about to be about to be

No gerunds, supines, or Present Participle.

THE VERB.

Verbs are of various forms-

- 1. Regular as, Amo, moneo, rego, audio.
- 2. Irregular as, Possum, volo, nolo, malo, etc.
- Deponent partly active, partly passive; as, Loquor, I speak, p. 48.
- 4. Impersonal used in 3rd pers. sing. and infinitive mood; as, Piget me, it grieves me.
- 5. Defective not having all their parts; as, Inquam, I say.
- Quasi-passive, or semi-deponent—as, fo, I am made; gaudeo, gavisus sum, I rejoice.

All of which will be mentioned in their proper places.

TRANSITIVE AND INTRANSITIVE VERBS.

Verbs are either-

- 1. Transitive:
- or,
- 2. Intransitive.

1. Transitive-

The word transitive is made up of two Latin words, trans, across, and eo, to go. For our present purpose it will signify passing on, and it means, when spoken of a Verb, that the action of the Verb passes on to the case which follows it—

I love the boys. I hit the table. I eat an apple.

Here it can be seen at once that love, hit, eat are transitive Verbs; that is, that there is an action in the Verb which passes on to the case.

2. Intransitive.

A Verb is intransitive, that is, not transitive (in meaning not) when there is no action in the Verb to pass on; as—

I stand. The tree grows. The bird flies.

Here it can be seen that in stand, grows, flies there is no action that will pass on.

There are some Verbs which are both transitive and intransitive; as Doleo, I grieve, grieve for.

STEM OF THE VERB.

To conjugate a Verb a boy must know, not merely the Stem of the Present, but also that of the Perfect and Supine.

The Stem of the Present is found in the Imperative Mood; except (1) in the *Third* Conjugation, where the final "e" must be cut off; and (2) in Deponent Verbs, where *re* or *ere* must be thrown away. Thus the stem of

Amo is Ama.	Venor is Vena.
Moneo is Mone.	Vereor is Vere.
Rego is Reg-	Utor is Ut-
Audio is Audi.	Partior is Parti

The Stem of the Perfect of any Regular (a) Verb of

Conjugation I. is found by adding v to the Stem of the Present; as, Ama, amav.

Conjugation II. is found by changing e of the Stem of the Present into u; as, Mone, monu.

Conjugation IV. is found by adding v to the stem of the Present; as, Audi, audiv.

The Stem of the Perfect in Conjugation III, is so irregular that it can only be found by consulting a dictionary.

The Stem of the Supine of any Regular (a) Verb is found by adding to the Stem of the Present in Conjugations I., IV.; as, ama, amat; audi, audit. In Conjugations II., III., the Stem of the Supine is so irregular that the Verb should be looked out.

We add here the Tenses, etc., formed from the different Stems.

From Stem of Present.	From Stem of Perfect.	From Stem of Supine.
Present Act. and Pass.	Perfect Act.	Supines
Future Simple A. and P.	Future Perfect Act.	Participle Fut. Act.
Imperf. Act. and Pass.	Pluperfect Act.	Infinitive Fut. Pass.
Imperat. Act. and Pass.	Infinitive Perfect Act.	Participle Perf. Pass.
Infin. Pres. Act. and		Perfect Pass.
Pass.		Future Perf. Pass.
Gerund and Gerundive		Pluperfect Pass.
Participle Pres. Act.		Infinitive Perf. Pass.

⁽a) We say Regular Verbs, for many are irregular, and it would be beyond the scope of the present manual to enter into the various irregularities.

THE REGULAR VERBS.

Regular Verbs have

- 4 Conjugations.
- 2 Voices.
- 4 Moods.
 6 Tenses.

- 2 Numbers.
- 6 Persons (generally).
- 3 Gerunds.
- 2 Supines.

4 Participles.

THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

are known by the ending of the Infinitive Mood.

- 1. Has ā long before re; as, amāre, to love.
- 2. Has ē long before re; as, monēre, to advise.
- 3. Has è short before re; as, regère, to rule.
- 4. Has ī long before re; as, audīre, to hear.

Two Voices.

1. Active. 2. Passive.

FOUR MOODS.

- 1. Indicative.
- 2. Conjunctive.
- 3. Imperative.
- 4. Infinitive.

SIX TENSES.

- 1. Present.
- 2. Future Simple.
- 3. Imperfect.
- 4. Perfect.
- 5. Future Perfect.
- 6. Pluperfect.

Each tense, in Indicative and Conjunctive Mood, has two Numbers, and three Persons in each Number.

The Imperative has Number and Person, but the latter incomplete.

The Infinitive has neither Number nor Person.

THREE GERUNDS.

- 1. Nom. or Acc. in dum; as, amandum, loving.
- 2. Genitive in di; as,

amandi, of loving.

3. Dat. or Abl. in do; as, amando, for or by loving.

Two Supines.

- 1. Supine in um; as, amatum, to love.
- 2. Supine in u; as, amatu, to be loved, or in loving.

PARTICIPLES.

There are four Participles:

- 1. Present in ans or ens; as, amans, loving; monens, advising.
- 2. Participle in dus (known as the Gerundive); as, amandus, to be, that is to be, or that must be loved.
- 3. Perfect in us; as, amatus, loved, or having been loved.
- 4. Future in rus; as, amaturus, going to love, about to love.

These Participles are also classed in another way:

Two Active.

- 1. Present in ans or ens.
- 2. Future in rus.

Two Passive.

- 1. Perfect in us.
- 2. Participle in dus.

THE REGULAR VERBS CONJUGATED.

•
m
. {
•
5
5
s }
i

This long form may be much shortened.

1st Pers. Pres.	Amo	Moneo	Rego	Audio
Inf. Pres.	Amāre	Monëre	Regere	Audire
Perf.	Amavi	Monŭi	Rexi	Audivi
Supine in um	Amātum	Monitum	Rectum	Auditum

SHORT FORM FOR PASSIVES.

1st Pers. Pres.	Amor	Monĕor	Regor	Audĭor
Inf. Pres.	Amari	Monēri	Regi	Audīri
Part. Perf.	Amatus	Monĭtus	Rectus	Audītus
Gerundive	Amandus	Monendus	Regendus	Audiendus

TENSES OF THE REGULAR VERBS-ACTIVE VOICE.

					,					
	ð	non	əsinpr	2			əno	7		
Conjunctive Mood. Present.	I may thou mayest he may	we may they may	i may thou mayest he may we may	ye may they may	I may rule I may hear neam.	Imperfect. I might	thou mightest he might	ve might ye might they might	I might advise I might rule I might hear	like Amarem
Conju	S. Amem Ames Amet	P. Amemus Ametis Ament		Moneatis Moneant	Kegam $I m$ Audiam $I m$ $like$ Moneam.	S. Amarem	Amaret D Amaret	Amaretis Amaretis	Monerem Regerem Audirem	like A
	би	iivol	ing g ng				evol		sed 1 d	
Imperfect.	I was thou wast he was	we were ye were they were	I was advising I was ruling I was hearing	ıābam.	Perfect. I have	thou hast he has	we have ye have	they have	I have advised I have ruled I have heard	like Amāvi.
	S. Amābam Amabas Amabat	P. Amabanus Amabatis Amabant	Monēbam Regēbam Audiēbam	like Amābam	P. S. Amāvi	Amavisti Amavit	P. Amavimus Amavistis	Amavērunt Amavēre	Monti Rexi Audivi	like A
INDICATIVE MOOD.	I love thou lovest he loves	we love ye love they love	I advise thou advisest he advises	ve advise ye advise then advise	I rule thou rulest	he rules we rule	ye rule they rule	I hear thou hearest	he hears we hear ye hear	they hear
	Amo Amas Amat			Monetis Monetis	Règo Regis	Regit Regimus	Regitis Regunt	Audio Audis	Audit Audimus Auditis	Audiunt,
,	zo.	占.	zá ř	٠;	σά	ь.		\mathbf{z}	ρ ί	

		•	ILE MEGULA	.10 4 12 16 12 13 5 .	00
CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	Perfect.	S. Amaverim I may Amaveris thou mayest Amaverit he may Amaveritius we may Amaveritis ye may	Monuerim I may have advised Rexerim I may have ruled Audiverim I may have heard like Amaverim.	Pluperfect. S. Amavissen I should Amavisses thou wouldest Amavisset he would P. Amavissenus we should Amavisseits ye would Amavissent they would	Monuissem I should have advised Rexissem I should have ruled Audivissem I should have heard like Amavissem.
INDICATIVE MOOD.	Future Perfect.	S. Amavero I shall Amaveris thou wilt Amaverit he will P. Amaveritis ye will Amaveritis ye will Amaveritis they will	Monuero I shall have advised Rexero I shall have ruled Audivero I shall have heard like Amavero.	S. Amaveram I had Amaveras thou hadst Amaveras thou hadst Amaveram we had Amaverams we had Amaveratis ye had Amaverant they had	Monueram I had advised Rexeram I had ruled Audiveram I had heard üke Amaveram.
Indicat	Future Simple.	S. Amabo I shall Amabis thou wilt Amabit, he will P. Amabimus we shall Amabitis ye will Amabut they will	Monebo I shall advise like Amabo. S. Regam I shall	Reget thou wilt Reget he will P. Regenus we shall Regent ye will Regent they will Audiam I shall hear	

TENSES OF THE REGULAR VERBS-PASSIVE VOICE,

			p	əa	oj a	q	_	_	p	98i	apı	9 90	q													
CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	Present.	I may	thou mayest	he may	we may	ye may	they may	I may	Morearis (re) thou mayest	he may	we may	ye may	they may		I may be, etc.	I may be, etc.	like Monear.		Imperject.	pən noqi (e	ne ne	g pr		they I m	X	Monerer, negerer, Audirer, like Amarer.
Conjunct	P_1	S. Amer	Ameris (re)	Ametur	P. Amemur	Amemini	Amentur	S. Monear	Monearis (r	Moneatur	P. Moneamur	Moneamini	Moneantur		Regar	Audiar	like 1	,		S. Amarer I Amareris (re) thou	Amaretur	Amaremur	Ameremini	Amarentur	J.C	Monerer, neg
			$p_{\tilde{r}}$	107	би	iisd	!	ţc.	tc.	tc.						pəc	ιοι	sv	n			tc.	tc.		_	
	fect.	I was	thou wert	he was	we were	ye were	they were	I was being, etc.	I was being, etc.	I was being, etc.	nabar.		,	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	I	thou	he sh	swe bee	ye	they) a	I have been etc.	I have been etc.	I have been, etc.			
INDICATIVE MOOD.	. Imperfect.	S. Amabar	Amabaris	Amabatur	P. Amabamur	Amabamini	Amabantur	Monebar	Regebar	Audiebar	like Amabar.		7	rerject.	S. Amatus sum	Amatus es	Amatus est	P. Amati sumus we	Amati estis	Amati sunt	Monitus sum	Rectus sum	Auditus sum			
DICATI			1	na a	oį		_	_	1	pəs	iai	m	_				$p_{\partial j}$	nı		_	_		p.u	эυ		
INI	nt.	I am	thou art	he is	we are	ye are	they are	I am	thou art	he is	we are	ye are	they are		I am	thou art	he is	we are	ye are	they are	I am	thou art	he is	we are	ye are	they are
	Present.	Amor	Amaris (re)	Amatur	Amamur	Amamini	Amantur	Moneor	Moneris (re)	Monetur	Monemur	Monemini	Monentur		Regor	Regĕris (re)	. Regitur	Regimur	Regimini	Reguntur	Audior	Audīris (re)	Auditur	Audimur	Audimini	Audiuntur
		മ്			പ്			σż			Ъ.				တ်		-	P.			ņ			Дi		

ċ
<u></u>
MOOD.
INDICATIVE
CA
Ē
=

Conjunctive Mod. Perfect.	Amatus sim I Amatus sis thou beed Amatus sit he he have a Amatus simus we have a Amati sitis ye may Amati sint they	Monitus sim I may, etc. Rectus sim I may, etc. Auditus sim I may, etc.	S. Amatus essem I Amatus esses thou ee Amatus esset he Ee Amati essemus ve he mati essemus ve his Amati essent they	Monitus essem Rectus essem Auditus essem like Amatus essem.
Indicative Mood. Future Perfect.	Amatus eris thou Amatus eris thou Amatus erit he Amati erimus we Amati eritis ye shart eritis ye shart eritis he Amati erunt they	Monitus ero I shall, etc. Rectus ero I shall, etc. Auditus ero I shall, etc. like Amatus ero.	S. Amatus eram I Amatus eras thou Amatus erat he P. Amati eramus we Amati eratis ye Amati eratis ye Amati erant they	Monitus eram I had, etc. Rectus eram I had, etc. Auditur eram I had, etc. ike Amatus eram.
INDICATI	Amaberis (re) thou have the Amabitur he the Amabitur we the Amabimini he they are Amabuntur they	Monebor I shall be, etc. like Amabor.	S. Begor I Regéris (re) thou will Regetur he Crais Regemur tre Regemini ye Regentur they Audist I shall be, etc.	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

	ACTIVE.	Passive.				
Ama	love thou	Amare	be thou loved			
Amate	love ye	Amamini	be ye loved			
Mone	advise thou	Monere	be thou advised			
Monete	advise ye	Monemini	be ye advised			
Rege	rule thou	Regere	be thou ruled			
Regite	rule ye	Regimini	be ye ruled			
Audi	hear thou	Audire	be thou heard			
Audite	hear ye	Audimini	be ye heard			

FUTURE SIMPLE.

Amato	thou must love	Amator	thou must be loved
Amato	he must love	Amator	he must be loved
Amatote	ye must love		
Amanto	they must love	Amantor	they must be loved
Moneto	thou must advise	Monetor	thou must be advised
Moneto	he must advise	Monetor	he must be advissd
Monetote	ye must advise		
Monento	they must advise	Monentor	they must be advised
Regito	thou must rule	Regitor	thou must be ruled
Regito	he must rule	Regitor	he must be ruled
Regitote	ye must rule		
Regunto	they must rule	Reguntor	they must be ruled
Audito	they must hear	Auditor	thou must be heard
Audito	he must hear	Auditor	he must be heard
Auditote	ye must hear		
Audiunto	they must hear.	Audiuntor	they must be heard

INFINITIVE MOOD.

ACTIVE.

Amaturus esse

to love

to have loved

to advise

to be about to love

Amāre

Monēre

Amavisse

Present and Imperfect

Perfect and Pluperfect

Present and Imperfect

Future

Perfect and Pluperfect	Monuisse	to have advised
Future	Moniturus esse	to be about to advise
Present and Imperfect	Regere	to rule
Perfect and Pluperfect	Rexisse	to have ruled
Future	Recturus esse	to be about to rule
Present and Imperfect	Audire	to hear
Perfect and Pluperfect	Audivisse	to have heard
Future	Auditurus esse	to be about to hear
	Passive.	
Present and Imperfect	Amari	to be loved
Perfect and Pluperfect	Amatus esse	to have been loved
Future	Amatum iri	to be about to be loved
Present and Imperfect	Moneri	to be advised
Perfect and Pluperfect	Monitus esse	to have been advised
Future	Monitum iri	to be about to be advised
Present and Imperfect	Regi	to be ruled
Perfect and Pluperfect	Rectus esse	to have been ruled
Future	Rectum iri	to be about to be ruled
Present and Imperfect	Audiri	to be heard
Perfect and Pluperfect	Auditus esse	to have been heard
Future	Auditum iri	to be about to be heard

GERUNDS, SUPINES, PARTICIPLES.

There are three Gerunds:

- 1. Ending in dum.
- 2. Ending in di.
- 3. Ending in do.
- N. A. Amandum loving
 - G. Amandi of loving.
- D. A. Amando for or by loving
- N. A. Monendum advising
 - G. Monendi of advising
- D. A. Monendo for, by, advising
- N. A. Regendum ruling
 - G. Regendi of ruling
- D. A. Regendo for or by ruling
- N. A. Audiendum hearing
 - G. Audiendi of hearing
- D. A. Audiendo for or by hearing

There are two Supines:

- 1. Supine in um.
- 2. Supine in u.

Amatum	to love
Amatu	to be loved

Monitum to advise

Monitu to be advised

Rectum to rule
Rectu to be ruled.

Auditum to hear
Auditu to be heard.

There are four Participles:

ACTIVE.

Present in ans or ens. Future in rus.

PASSIVE.

Perfect in us. Participle in dus,—Gerundive.

ACTIVE.

Amans	loving	
Amaturus	about to	love

Monens advising
Moniturus about to advise

Regens ruling.
Recturus about to rule

Audiens hearing
Auditurus about to hear

PASSIVE.

Amatus loved
Amandus meet to be loved

Monitus advised.

Monendus meet to be advised

Rectus ruled

Regendus meet to be ruled

Auditus heard

Audiendus meet to be heard.

IRREGULAR OR ANOMALOUS VERBS.

The following Verbs are called Irregular or Anomalous,

 $\begin{array}{lll} \text{Possum} & I \ am \ able. \\ \text{Volo} & I \ am \ willing. \\ \text{Nolo} & I \ am \ unwilling. \\ \text{Malo} & I \ am \ more \ willing. \\ \text{Fero} & I \ bear. \\ \text{Fio} & I \ am \ made. \\ \text{Eo.} & I \ go. \end{array}$

IRREGULAR VERBS CONJUGATED.

1st Pers. Pres.	Possum	Volo	Nolo	Malo
2nd Pers. Pres.	Potes	Vis	Nonvis	Mavis
Inf.	Posse	Velle	Nolle	Malle
Perf.	Potŭi	Volui	Nolui	Malŭi
Gerund in dum		Volendum ;	Nolendum >	Malendum >
,, di		Volendi }	Nolendi }	Malendi }
,, do	_	Volendo)	Nolendo	Malendo)
Supine in um		_		
· ,, u				
Part. Pres.		Volens	Nolens	Malens
Fut.	-			
1st Pers. Pres.	Fero		Fio	Eo
2nd Pers. Pres.	Fers		Fis	Is
Inf.	Ferre	-	Fieri	Ire
Perf.	Tuli		Factus sum	Ivi
Gerund in dum	Ferer	ndum)		Eundum)
,, di	Feren	ndi {		Eundi {
,, do	Feren	ndo)		Eundo)
Supine in um	Latu	m)		Itum)
,, u	Latu	3		Itu }
Part. Pres.	Feren	ns)		Iens (euntis))
Fut.	Latū	rus }		Iturus

ANOMALOUS OR IRREGULAR VERBS.

Perfect.	Indicative. Conjunctive.	S. Potui Potuerim Potuisti Potueris	Potuit	s P. Potuimus Potuerimus Potuistis Potueritis	Potuërunt or ëre Potuerint	Voluerim)	Noluerim	Malui \ Po	Tuli & Tulerim	Iverim		PLUPERFECT.	S. Potueram Potuissem	Potueras Potuisses	Potuerat Potuisset	P. Potueramus Potuissemus	Potueratis Potuissetis	Detuguent Detniegont
Furure.	Fut. Perf.	Potuero Potueris		s Potuerímus Potueritis	Potuerint	Voluero	Volueris	Voluerit	Voluerimus	Volueritis	Voluerint		Noluero	Maluero	Tulero	Ivero		127. 17. 10 mm m. 3 Welman
	Indicative.	S. Potero Poteris	Poterit	P. Poterimus Poteritis	Poterunt	S. Volam	Voles	Volet	P. Volemus	Voletis	Volent		Nolam	Malam	Feram	Fiam		Vila Vole
Present.	Conjunctive.	Possim Possis	Possit	Possimus Possitis	Possint	Velim	Velis	Velit	Velimus	Velitis	Velint		Nolim	Nolis	Nolit	Nolimus	Nolitis	Nolint
P.	Indicative.	S. Possum Potes	Potest	P. Possumus Potestis	Possunt	S. Volo	∇ is	Vult	P. Volumus	Vultfs	Volunt		S. Nolo	Nonvis	Nonvult	P. Nolumus	Nonvultis	Nolunt

	tive.	Like Potuissem	pa	rder printe	tof are ole.	no di gas jesep	ges ges tou	rs or sq or ston	ose of I of of the contract of	se ten i sesn easke	91 90 91 90 91 91	B.— Bliti Blic	i ta N	i
RFECT.	Conjunctive.	Voluissem Noluissem Maluissem Tulissem Ivessim	F Eo.	Eam	Eas	Eamus	Eatis	Eant	F Eo.	Iveris	Iverit	Iverimus	Iveritis	Ivernt
PLUPERFECT.	Indicative.	Volueram Nolueram Malueram Tuleram Iveram	PRESENT OF	S. Eo	Is 1.	P. Imus	Itis	Eunt	FUTURE OF	S. Ibo	Ibit	P. Ibimus	Ibitis	Ibunt
	ive.	_								em.	Vell	941	1	
FECT.	Conjunctive.	Possem Posset Posset Possetis Possetis		Vellem	Velles Vellet	Vellemus	Velletis	Vellent		Nollem	Ferrem	Fierem	Irem	
IMPERFECT.	Indicative.	S. Poteram Poteras Poterat Poteratus Poteratus Poteratus Poteratus		S. Volebam	Volebas	P. Volebanu	Volebatis	Volebant		Nolebam H	_	8	Ibam	
Present.	Conjunctive.	Malim Malis Malit Malimus Malitis		Fiam	Fias	Fiamus	Fiatis	Fiant		Feram	Ferat	Feramus	Feratis	Ferant
PRI	Indicative.	S. Malo Mavis Mavult Malumus Mavultis		S. Fio	Fis	F. F.	1	Fiunt		S. Fero	Fert	Ferimus	Fertis	Ferunt

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

I	resent.		Future		
Noli	Nolīte	Nolīto	Nolito	Nolitōte	Nolunto
\mathbf{Fer}	Ferte	Ferto	Ferto	Fertote	Ferunto
\mathbf{Fi}	Fite				
I	Īte	Īto	Īto	- Ītōte	Eunto

INFINITITE MOOD.

Present	and Imperfect.	Perfec	t and Pluperfect.
Posse	to be able	Potuisse	to have been able
Velle	to be willing	Voluisse	to have been willing
Nolle	to be unwilling	Noluisse	to have been unwilling
Malle	to be more willing	Malluisse	to have been more, etc.
Ferre	to bear	\mathbf{T} ulisse	to have borne
Fieri	to be made		
Ire	to go	Ivisse	to have gone

DEPONENT VERBS.

There are some verbs called Deponent—from de and pono, I lay aside, or lay down,—which lay aside the Active Form. They may be variously described:

- 1. They mostly look like a Passive Verb, but are not;
- 2. They are partly Active, and partly Passive;
- 3. They have, chiefly, a Passive Form and an Active meaning.

Thus Venor, to hunt, looks like a Passive Verb, but as the meaning is I hunt, and not I am hunted, it may be known to be Deponent.

Deponent Verbs take no particular case after them. Some are Active, and are followed by the Accusative case, as Vereor, I fear; or by some other case, as Utor, I use, which takes an Ablative; Misereor, I pity, which takes a Genitive. Some also are Intransitive, and take no case, as Morior, I die.

In conjugating a Deponent Verb, it will be seen that they also take of the nature of an Active Verb by having Gerunds and Supines.

They also have four Participles, two (Pres. and Fut.) Active in form and sense; one (Perf.) Passive in form, but generally Active in sense; and the Gerundive.

Particular notice must be taken of the meaning of the Perfect Participle of a Deponent Verb, venatus, veritus, usus, partitus, the English of which is, having hunted, having feared, having used, having divided; whereas if it were the Passive Participle of an Active Verb it would be hunted, having been hunted, etc. There is indeed no such convenient Latin Participle as having loved, having advised, etc., in Active Verbs.

DEPONENT VERBS CONJUGATED.

	1st Conj.	2nd Conj.	3rd Conj.	4th Conj.
	(To hunt.)	(To fear.)	(To use.)	(To divide.)
1st Pers. Pres.	Venor	Vereor	Utor	Partior
2nd Pers. Pres.	Venāris	Verēris	Utĕris	Partīris
Inf. Pres.	Venāri	Verēri	Uti	Partīri
Perf.	Venātus sum	Verĭtus sum	Usus sum	Partītus sum
Ger. in dum	Venandum)	Verendum)	Utendum)	Partiendum)
,, di	Venandi }	Verendi {	Utendi {	Partiendi }
,, do	Venando)	Verendo)	Utendo)	Partiendo)
Gerundive	Venandus	Verendus	Utendus	Partiendus
Supine in um	Venātum ?	Veritum ?	Usum ?	Partītum)
,, u	Venatu 5	Veritu 5	Usu 3	Partītu }
Part. Pres.	Venans	Verens	Utens	Partiens)
,, Perf.	Venatus }	Veritus }	Usus {	Partītus {
" Fut.	Venaturus)	Veriturus)	Usurus)	Partitūrus)

SHORTER FORM.

1st Pers. Pres.	Venor	Vereor	Utor	Partior
Inf. Pres.	Venari	Vereri	Uti	Partiri
Part. Perf.	Venatus	Veritus	Usus	Partītus
Gerundive	Venandus	Verendus	Utendum	Partiendus

CONJUGATION OF THE DEPONENT VERB UTOR, I use (THIRD).

	IMPERATIVE MOOD.		use thou			use ye			thou	he must use	2000 2000		they)							
			Utěrě			Utimini				Utitor			Utuntör t							
		_		98	n									əsn			_			
VERB FINITE.	Conjunctive Mood.	I may	thou mayst	he may	we may	ye may	they may							I might	thou mightest	he might	we might	ye might	they might	
VER	Conjunc	Utăr	Ută-ris (rĕ)	Utātŭr	Utāmŭr	Utāminī	Utantŭr				4			Utěrěr	Utěrē-ris (rĕ)	Utěretůr	Utěrēmŭr	Utěrēmini	Utërentŭr	
			28							98	n					61	uisi	ı		
	E Mood.	I use	thou usest	he uses	we use	ye use	they use	I shall	thou wilt	he will	we shall	ye will	they will	I was	() thou wast	he was	we were	ye were	they were	
	INDICATIVE MOOD.	S. Utŏr	Utĕ-rĭs (rĕ)	Utitŭr	Pl. Utimŭr	Utimini	Utuntŭr	S. Utăr	Utē-ris (rĕ) thou wilt	Utētūr	Pl. Utēmŭr	$\mathbf{U}^{\mathbf{t}}$	Utentŭr	S. Utebăr,	Utēbā-rīs (rĕ) thouwast	\mathbf{U} tēbātŭr	Pl. Utēbāmŭr	Utēbāminī	Utēbantūr	
	Present Tense.			Future Simple.			Imperfect.													

	IIII TEND CION			
INFINITE. Uti, to use Usus essě, to have used Usürüs essě, to be about	to use Utendum, using Utendi, of using Utendi, for or by using Usum, to use Usū, in using, or to be used	Utens, using Usūrūs, about to use Usūs, having used Utendūs, to be used		
VERB Inf. Pres. Imp. Inf. Perf. Plup. Inf. Fut.	Ger. Nom. Ac. Ger. Gen Ger. Dat. Abl. Sup. in um Sup. in u	Part. Pres Part. Fut Part. Perf Gerundive		
pəsn əavy		pəsn əavy		
I may thou mayst he may we may ye may they may		Usus essem I should Usus essēs thou wouldst Usus essēt he would Usi essēmūs we should Usi essētīs ye would Usi essetīs they would		
Usus sim Usus sīs Usus sīt Usi sīmūs Usi sītīs Usi sītīs				
25	pəsn ə.vvy	pəsn		
I used thou usedst he used we used ye used they used they used	I shall thou wilt he will we shall ye will they will they will	I had thou hadst he had we had ye had they had		
Usŭs sum Usŭs ēs Usī sŭmŭs Usī sŭmŭs Usī sunt	Usus ērē Usus ērīs Usus ērīt Usi ērīmūs Usi ērītīs Usi ērītīs	Usus ĕram Usus ĕrās Usus ĕrāt Usi ĕrāmus Usi ĕrātis Usi ĕrātis		
જં લં	જ. ન	જું બું		
Perfect.	Future Perfect.	Pluperfect.		

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Impersonal Verbs are those which have no Personal Pronoun as Subject, and are used only in the Third Person Singular (Ind. and Conj.) and in the Infinitive Mood.

It hails, grandinat.

It vexes me, me piget.

The greater number of the Impersonal Verbs are of the second conjugation. We give those most commonly used.

Conjugation I.

Delectat, it delights.
Juvat, it delights.
Constat, it is evident.

Tonat, it thunders. Fulgurat, it lightens. Grandinat, it hails.

CONJUGATION II.

Oportet, it behoves.
Decet, it becomes.
Dedecet, it is unseemly.
Piget, it irks.

Pudet, it shames. Pœnitet, it repents. Tædet, it disgusts. Miseret, it moves pity. Libet, it pleases. Licet, it is lawful. Liquet, it is clear. Attinet, it relates. Pertinet, it belongs.

CONJUGATION III.

Accidit, it happens. Contingit, it befalls. Ningit, it snows. Pluit, it rains.
Lucescit, it dawns.
Vesperascit, it grows late.

Conjugation IV.

Convenit, it suits.

Evenit, it turns out.

Expedit, it is expedient.

IRREGULAR.

Interest, it imports.

Refert, it concerns.

The Impersonal Verbs may be arranged also according to the case they are constructed with. The following are used with the Accusative Case-

> Decet. Oportet. Dedecet. Piget. Delectat. Ponitet. Juvat. Pudet. Miseret. Tædet.

The following are used with the Dative Case-

Convenit. Libet. Accidit. Expedit. Licet. Contingit. Evenit.

Some of these Impersonal Verbs, however, are constructed with ad and the Accusative, e.g. attinet and pertinet, while others, in addition to an Accusative of the person, have a Genitive as well, as piget, pudet, etc. So we may sum up the caseconstruction of these Impersonal Verbs thus:-

Those which require

- a. Accusative of Object: oportet, decet, etc.
- b. Dative of the Object: libet, licet, etc.
- c. Ad with Accusative: attinet, pertinet, etc.
- d. A Genitive with an Accusative, piget, pudet, etc.

To these we may add interest and refert, which admit a Genitive unless it is necessary to use a pronoun; when, in place of the Genitive, we use meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ, agreeing with re. 129 (III. a).

The Impersonals—

Fulgurat, it lightens, Pluit, it rains, Vesperascit, it gets late, Tonat, it thunders, Grandinat, it hails,

Ningit, it snows, Luscescit, it dawns,

are of course not used with any Personal or other Object.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Irregular or Anomalous Verbs (see pp. 45-48) are those which have for the most part the usual tenses, but are irregular as regards the formation of some of these tenses; as—

Possum, I am able.
Volo, I am willing.
Nolo, I am unwilling.
Malo, I prefer.
Fero, I bear.
Fio, I am made.
Eo, I go.
Queo, I am able.

But Defective Verbs are those which want some of the usual parts of a Verb, and may be divided into—

1. Those which have no Tenses derived from the Present stem, though they have the English of the Present; as—

Cœpi, I have begun (Present-Past) Odi, I hate. Memini, I remember.

- 2. Those which have Perfect without Supine, and those which have neither Perfect nor Supine; as, Tremo, I tremble, which has no Supine, and Mitesco, I grow mild, which has no Perfect or Supine.
- 3. Verbs defective in various forms; as-

Aio, I say.
Quæso, I entreat.

Inquam, I say. Fari, to speak.

Imperatives: Apage, begone; cedo, give here; have, salve, hail; age, come; vale, farewell.

QUASI-PASSIVE AND SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS.

Quasi-Passive Verbs are those which unite an Active form with a Passive meaning; as—

Exulo, I am banished. Fio, I am made. Liceo, I am put to auction. Vapulo, I am beaten. Veneo, I am on sale.

SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS

(1) are, first, those which have an Active Present but a Perfect of Passive form (Active meaning); as—

Audeo, I dare. Perfect, Ausus sum, I dared. Fido, I trust. ,, Fisus sum, I trusted. Gaudeo, I rejoice. ,, Gavisus sum, I rejoiced. Soleo, I am wont. ,, Solitus sum, I was wont.

(2) Those which have an Active Perfect with Deponent Perfect Principle; as—

Present. Perfect. Perfect Participle.

Juro, I swear. Juravi, I swore. Juratus, having sworn.

Ceno, I sup. Cenavi, I supped. Cenatus, having supped.

Prandeo, I dine. Prandi, I dined. Pransus, having dined.

So nupta, wedded; potus, having drunk, and some others.

DERIVED VERBS.

Derived Verbs are divided into-

- 1. Frequentative.
- 2. Inceptive.
- 3. Desiderative.
- 1. Frequentative Verbs express repeated or intenser action, and are of the First Conjugation, and end in to or so, or *to, *tor.

The principal Frequentative Verbs are:

Canto	sing.	\mathbf{H} esito	$stick\ fast.$
Capto	catch up.	Lectito	gather often.
†Curso	run hither & thither.	Merso	dip in.
Cursito	run hither & thither.	Minitor	threaten.
Clamito	cry aloud.	\mathbf{Pulso}	strike.
Dicto	say often.	†Rogito	ask often.
Dictito	say often.	Salto	dance.
Gesto	bear	$\dagger Ventito$	come often.

These are all conjugated regularly; -āre, -avi, -atum, except those marked †, which have no perfect or supine; but

Minitor, -āri, -atus sum, is deponent.

2. Inceptive Verbs (sometimes called Inchoative) express beginning of action, and are of the *Third* Conjugation, and end in asco or esco; as—

Labasco, I begin to totter. Pallesco, I turn pale. Puerasco, I become a boy. Mitesco, I become mild.

3. Desiderative Verbs express desire of action, and are of the Fourth Conjugation, and end in urio; as—

Esurio, I am hungry, wish to eat. Parturio, I am in labour, wish to produce.

ADVERBS.

There are four kinds of Adverbs-

- 1. Adverbs of place.
- 2. Adverbs of time.
- 3. Adverbs of number.
- 4. Adverbs of description.
- 1. Adverbs of place answer the questions-
 - 1. Ubi, where?

- 4. Unde, whence?
- 2. Quo, whither ?
- 5. Qua, which way?
- 3. Quorsum, whitherward?
- 6. Quatenus, quousque, how far?
- 2. Adverbs of time answer the questions-
 - 1. Quando, ubi, when?
- 2. Quamdĭu, how long?
- 3. Adverbs of number answer the question-

Quoties, how often?

4. Adverbs of description express

manner

quality

quantity.

Many Adverbs are derived from Adjectives, and end in ē, ter; as—

Pulchrē, finely. Misĕrē, wretchedly. Fortitēr, bravely. Sapientēr, wisely.

N.B.-Adverbs of negation are non, haud, not.

PREPOSITIONS.

There are three classes of Prepositions-

- 1. Those which are followed by the Accusative Case.
- 2. Those which are followed by the Ablative.
- 3. Those which are followed by the Acc. and Abl.

1. Prepositions followed by the Accusative Case-

Ad, to, at
Adversus
Adversus
Ante, before
Apud, at, in, among
Circum, around
Circa, circiter, about
Cis, citra, on the near side of
Contra, against, over against
Erga, towards (of the feelings)
Extra, outside of, out of
Infra, below
Inter, between, among, amid
Intra, within

Juxta, adjoining to, beside
Ob, over against, by reason of
Penes, in the power of
Per, through
Pone, behind
Post, after, behind
Prope, near; propius, proxime
Propter, nigh, on account of
Secundum, next, along, according
Supra, above [to
Trans, across
Ultra, beyond
Versus, versum, towards

2. Prepositions followed by the Ablative Case-

A, ab, abs, by or from
Absque, without
Clam, without the knowledge of
Coram, in the presence of
Cum, with
De, down from, from, concerning

Ex, e, out of, from
Palam, in sight of [with
Præ, before, owing to, compared
Pro, before, for, instead of
Sine, without
Tenus, reaching to, as far as

3. Prepositions followed by the Accusative or Ablative-

In, into, against (Acc.)
In, in, upon, among (Abl.)
Sub, up to, under (Acc.)
Sub, under (Abl.)
Super, over, upon
Subter, under

In and sub, with Accusative, imply motion; with Ablative, rest.

CONJUNCTIONS.

There are two kinds of Conjunctions-

- 1. Co-ordinative.
- 2. Sub-ordinative.
- 1. Co-ordinative are those which join words and sentences together, but do not affect mood; as—

Et, que, ac, atque, and. Aut, vel, ve, either, or. Sed, autem, but. Nam, enim, for, etc., etc.

2 Sub-ordinative are those which join sentences, influencing mood; as—

Ut, that.

Ne, lest.

Quod
Quia

because.

Quum, when, since. Si, if.

Si, if. Nisi, unless.

INTERJECTIONS.

An interjection is used to express pleasure, pain, astonishment, etc., and is used with different cases.

PROSODY.

GENERAL RULES FOR THE QUANTITIES OF LATIN WORDS.

I.

The following are LONG:-

- A vowel before two consonants; as, *iāctāntes*.
- A vowel before a double consonant or a j in same word; as, felīx, Amāzon, Ājāx.
- Diphthongs; as, mensæ, pauca, pænæ, Teucri, hīī.
- 4. Datives and ablatives singular and plural when they end in a, a, i, o, u, is (and e of the 5th declension); as, mensa, mensa, lapidī, gradū, meliorī, dominō, bonō, gradū, mensa, dominīs, faciē.
- Accusatives plural, unless they end in a.

SHORT.

- One vowel before another vowel in the same word is short, as via; but divi, five are long, and fidei, illius are common.
- All cases in a except ablative of the first declension and its corresponding adjectives; as, mensa, bona.

COMMON.

Syllables are sometimes common (i.e. long or short) when a vowel in the same word stands before two consonants, of which the first is a mute and the second is a liquid (l, r); as duplex, latebra.

The last syllable but one (penultimate) of a three-syllable or four-syllable word may be marked long or short (— —) as the pupil hears his tutor pronounce it, or as he himself may know; as, lapide, operibus, dominus, amābam.

N.B.—This is a very useful rule for all common words which the pupil is familiar with. He marks the penultimate long or short directly he hears it pronounced in dictation, or because, having heard it again and again, he is quite sure of the quantity.

To see how these few general rules work we subjoin a couplet marked according to these rules—and these rules only—and we find that we have the quantities of considerably more than half the syllables.

Quāscūnque āspicies, lācrýmæ fecere, liturās; Sēd tamen ēt lācrýmæ pondēra vocis habēnt.

II.

THE LONG AND SHORT TERMINATIONS WITH PRINCIPAL EXCEPTIONS.

LONG.

a, i, o, u-c-as, es, os.

а

ā is long, as frustrā; but—

- 1. Pută, ită, quiă, ejă are short.
- All cases in a are short—as mensa, opera—except the ablative of the first declension, as mensā.
- ī is long, as dominī; but—
- 1. Nisi, quasi are short.
- Some dative and vocative cases of Greek nouns are short, as Chlori.
- 3. Mihī, tibī, sibī, ubī, ibī, have the i

0

δ is long, as dominδ; but egŏ, modŏ, citŏ, duŏ, sciŏ, nesciŏ, are short—putδ, common.

u

ū is long, as tū, genū.

C

c is long, as āc, hīc (here); but— 1. Něc, doněc, făc, are short.

2. Hic (he, this) is common.

90

ās is long, as musās; but— Greek cases in as of third declension, as Pallas, lampadas (acc.), are short, and anas (a duck).

es

ēs is long, as hostēs; but—

- Some words in es increasing short in the gen. are short—comes, comitis; but though increasing short —abies, aries, Ceres, pes, are long.
- Es from sum and its compounds are short, and penës and some Greek plurals, as Troadës.

os

ös is long, as gladiös; but some Greek words are short, as Argös, Delös, and ös, ossis (a bone), and compös.

SHORT.

e, y-b, d, t, l, r, n-is, ys, us.

е

e is short, as rege; but-

 Imperatives of second conjugation; as, monē;

- 2. Ablatives of the fifth declension, as
- Adverbs derived from adjectives in us, as operosē,—are long. Benë and malë are however short.
- Monosyllables in e (except the enclitics que, ne, ve) are long; as, me, te, se, de, e, ne.
- Quarē, hodiē, ferē, fermē, ohē, are long.
- 6. Cavē and cavě are both used.
- 7. Famē, abl. of fames, is long.

b, d, t, y

are short, as ab, sed, et, amat, chely.

ı

is short, as Hannibăl; but nīl, sāl, sōl, are long—nihǐl, common.

_

r is short, as vir; but—

- 1. Lār, Nār, vēr, fūr, cūr.
- 2. Par with its compounds dispar, etc.

αίθήρ, ἀήρ, are long.

n

3. æther, aer, because derived from

n is short, as tegmën; but in many Greek words, such as Hymën, it is long.

is, ys

žs is short, as dulcis: but—

- Datives and ablatives in īs, as domĭnīs;
- 2. Sīs, from sum, and its compound possīs,
- Vis, from volo, and its compound, vis, strength;
- Second per. sing. of the pres. of the fourth conjugation, as audis, also malis, nolis, velis, are long. ÿs is short, as chelÿs.

us

us is short, as dominus; but-

- Words increasing long in the genitive, as juventūs, salūs, senectūs;
- 2. The monosyllables crus, thus;
- The ūs of the fourth declension, except Nom. and Voc. Singular, are long.

Syllables that cannot be marked by the help of this Table and by the General Rules already given must be looked out in Dictionary or Gradus; as for instance the first syllable of words such as quoque, genere, gradus, etc.

EPITOME.

There are

- 8 Parts of Speech.
- 2 Numbers.
- 3 Genders.
- 6 Cases.
- 5 Declensions (Substantives).
- 3 Classes of Adjectives.
- 8 Kinds of Pronouns.
- 4 Conjugations of Verbs.
- 2 Voices.
- 4 Moods.

EIGHT PARTS OF SPEECH:

- 1. Substantive
- 2. Adjective 3. Pronoun

declined.

- 4. Verb
- 5. Adverb 6. Preposition

undeclined.

7. Conjunction 8. Interjection

SIX CASES. with their signs in English.

- 1. Nominative. No sign.
- 2. Vocative. 0.
- 3. Accusative, No sign.
- 4. Genitive. Of.
- 5. Dative, To or for.
- 6. Ablative, In, with, from, by.

FIVE DECLENSIONS OF SUB-STANTIVES.

- 1. æ. Gen. 3. is.
- 4. fig. 2. i.
 - 5. ei.

- 6 Tenses.
- 3 Persons.

Singular. I, thou, he. Plural. Them, you, they.

- 3 Gerunds.
- 2 Supines.
- 4 Participles.
- 4 Kinds of Adverbs.
- 3 Classes of Prepositions.
- 2 Kinds of Conjunctions.

Two Numbers:

- Singular, as mensa, a table.
- 2. Plural, as mensæ, tables.

THREE GENDERS:

- 1. Masculine.
- 2. Feminine. 3. Neuter.

THREE CLASSES OF ADJECTIVES

Those which have in the Nominative three terminations:

us, a, um, as Bonus, a, um. er, a, um, as Tener, tenera, tenerum. er, is, e, as Acer, acris, acre.

- Those which have two. is. e. as Tristis, triste. or, us, as Melior, melius.
- Those which have one. 3. Felix, ingens, præstans.

PRONOUNS.

There are 8 Kinds of

Pronouns:

- 1. Personal.
- 2. Reflexive.
- 3. Possessive.
- 4. Demonstrative.
- 5. Definitive.
- 6. Relative.
- 7. Interrogative.
- 8. Indefinite.

1. PERSONAL PRONOUNS:

- 1. Ego, I.
- 2. Tu, thou (you).

Plur.

- 3. Nos. we.
- 4. Vos. you, ye.

2. Reflexive:

Se (sese), himself, herself, itself, themselves.

3. Possessive:

- 1. Meus. mine.
 - 2. Tuus, thine, your.
- his, hers, etc. 3. Suus.
- 4. Cuius, whose.
- 5. Noster, ours.
- 6. Vester, yours.

4. Demonstrative:

- 1. Is. that, he, she, it.
 - 2. Hie, this (near me).
 - 3. Ille, that (yonder).
 - 4. Iste, that (near you).

5. Definitive:

- 1. Idem, same. 2. Ipse, self.
- 6. RELATIVE:

Qui, who or which.

7. Interrogative:

Quis, who or what?

8. Indefinite:

Quis (aliquis), any one.

VERBS.

Verbs have

- 4 Conjugations.
- 2 Voices. 4 Moods.
- 6 Tenses.
- 6 Persons. 3 Singular.
- 3 Plural.
- 3 Gerunds.
- 2 Supines.
- 4 Participles.

FOUR CONJUGATIONS

Known by the endings of the Infinitive Mood:

- 1. Has \bar{a} long before re.
- 2. Has ē long before re.
- 3. Has ĕ short before re.
- 4. Has i long before re.

Two Voices:

1. Active. 2. Passive.

Four Moods:

- 1. Indicative.
- 2. Conjunctive.
- 3. Imperative. 4. Infinitive.

SIX TENSES:

- 1. Present.
- 2. Future Simple.
- 3. Imperfect.
- 4. Perfect.
- 5. Future Perfect.
- 6. Pluperfect.

THREE PERSONS:

Singular. I, thou (you), he.
Plural We, ye (you), they.

THREE GERUNDS:

- 1. Ending in dum.
- 2. Ending in di.
- 3. Ending in do.

Two Supines:

- 1. Supine in um.
- 2. Supine in u.

FOUR PARTICIPLES:

- 1. Present in ans or ens.
- 2. Participle in dus.
- 3. Perfect in us.
- 4. Future in rus.

PARTICLES.

The four Parts of Speech which are undeclined are:

1. Adverb.

- 2. Conjunction.
- 3. Preposition.
- 4. Interjection.

4 KINDS OF ADVERBS:

- 1. Adverbs of Place.
- 2. Adverbs of Time.
- 3. Adverbs of Number.
- 4. Adverbs of Description.

3 Classes of Prepositions:

- 1. Those which are followed by the Accusative case.
- 2. Those which are followed by the Ablative.
- 3. Those which are followed by the Accusative and Ablative.

2 Kinds of Conjunctions:

- 1. Co-ordinative.
- 2. Sub-ordinative.

Interjections

are particles of exclamation, and are not classed or divided except as regards the cases they are used with.

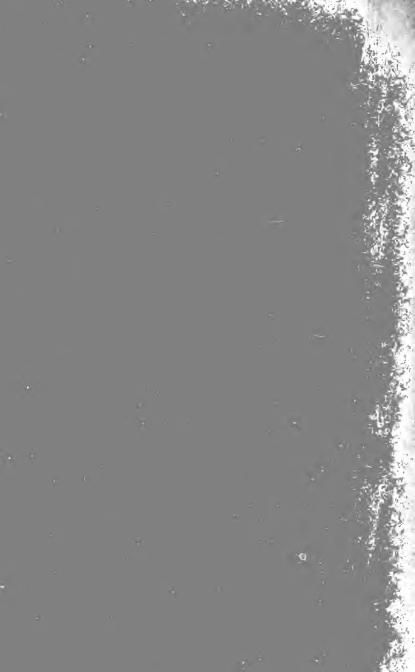
PART II. SYNTAX.



PART II. SYNTAX.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE	PAGE
	Simple Sentence 69-71	15. Adjectives and Their Cases 84
2.	Four General Rules 72	1. Gen. after Adjective.
3.	Verb and its Nominative . 73	2. Dative after Adjective.
4.	Adjective and Substantive 74	3. Ablative after Adjective.
	Apposition 75	16. Different Uses of Cases— 1. Nominative 86
	Relative and Antecedent . 75	2. Accusative . 86
٠.	Verb and its Accusative . 77	3. Genitive . 87
• •	Nominative after Verb 78	4. Dative 87
		5. Ablative 88
•	COMMITTE WATER TOTAL TOTAL	17. Locative Case 89
	Dative after Verb 80	18. Ablative Absolute 90
	Ablative after Verb 81	19. "Quam" after the Comp. 92
12.	Verbs which take Two	20. Sequence of Tenses 93
	Cases 82	21. Infinitive Mood 94
	1. Acc. and Genitive.	22. Gerunds 95
	2. Acc. and Dative.	23. Supines 95
10	Verbs which take either of	24. Participles 96
13.		25. The Gerundive 98
	Two Cases 83	26. Accusative and Infinitive
	1. Gen. or Accusative.	-0,
	2. Gen. or Ablative.	(Enunciatio Obliqua) 100
.,	T 1 111 table Death	27. "That," and "Ut" 102
14.	Verbs which take a Double	28. Oblique Statement 104
	Case 83	29. "Qui"
	1. Two Accusatives—Person and	30. Subjunctive Mood 105
	Thing.	31. Impersonal Verbs 106
	2. Two Accusatives—Object and	32. Asking Questions 108
	Complement. 3. Two Datives—Sum with other	33. Pronouns 110
	words.	34. Prepositions



PART II. SYNTAX.

A SIMPLE SENTENCE.

THE simplest sentence that can be framed contains a single thought only; as

Puer amat.
The boy loves.

Puer amatur.
The boy is loved.

That of which or of whom something is said is called the *subject*, as, "the boy"; and that which is said of the subject is called the *predicate* (from *pradico*, to assert), as "loves," "is loved."

We cannot indeed speak without having a subject to speak about, and we cannot frame a sentence without saying something concerning that subject.

The subject in the simplest sentence is always the Nominative Case, and that which is said about the subject—called the predicate—is the Verb.

Now this Subject or Nominative case may be either

- 1. A Substantive.
- 2. An Adjective used as a Substantive.
- 3. A Pronoun.
- 4. An Infinitive Mood.
- 5. A Clause.

Puer amat.
 Omnes amant vitam.

The boy loves.
All men love life.

3. Nos amamus.

We love.

o. Nos amamus.

We tove.

4. Amare est jucundum.

To love is pleasant.

5. Amare patriam est decorum. To love one's country is honourable.

A simple sentence may, however, consist of a single word only—because if a *Pronoun* is the *subject* the latter is implied in the ending of the Verbas *amamus*, "we love," not necessarily nos amamus.

But a simple sentence, though not the simplest sentence, may consist of more than a *subject* and *verb* by the introduction of what is called an *object*; as for example in our simplest sentence, "The boy loves," if we

wish to say whom or what the boy loves, we must add an object, which will generally be in the Accusative, as

Puer amat matrem.
The boy loves his mother.

Thus we see that a simple sentence may consist of (1) a Subject, (2) a Verb, or Predicate, (3) an Object.

Of course any of these three elements may be extended; e.g. we may add

- 1. An Adjective (say bonus) to puer;
- 2. An Adverb (say valde) to amat;
- 3. An Adjective (say caram) to matrem; as

Bonus puer valde amat caram matrem.

The good boy greatly loves his dear mother.

These Adjectives bonus and caram are called epithets (from two Greek words, $\epsilon\pi\iota \tau \iota \ell \eta \mu \iota$, "epi," on to, and "tithēmi," I place), and qualify (or attribute some quality to) each of the Substantives, and hence are said to be in attribution to them.

Valde is an Adverb (i.e. something added to the Verb) and qualifies the Verb amat. The Adverb frequently increases or lessens the force of the Verb. Instead, however, of valde we might have had an adverbial expression, as magno studio (with great affection):

Bonus puer amat magno studio caram matrem.

Note that the Object is so generally in the Accusative case that we speak of the Accusative or Object.

We have already learned that most Verbs take the Accusative after them, but we have also learned that some take other cases; as

- (a) Puer potitur pecuniæ (gen.).

 The boy gains possession of money.
- (b) Puer paret matri (dat.).

 The boy obeys his mother.

(c) Puer utitur cultro (abl.).

The boy uses his knife.

We can extend a sentence also by putting in some other Substantives which refer to the Substantives we already have, and these second Substantives are then said to be in apposition.

Æneas dux amat Achaten comitem. Æneas the leader loves Achates his attendant.

Here dux is in apposition to Eneas, and comitem in apposition to Achaten.

Again: instead of a single we sometimes have a double object. One is then called the nearer object, and is put in the Accusative case, the other the remoter object, and is put in the Dative; as

Puer dat librum matri.
The boy gives a book to his mother.

These remarks do not apply to the Verbs which are called Copulative from copula, a link, as

Puer est bonus. The boy is good.
Puer fit vir. The boy becomes a man.
Vir nascitur poeta. The man is born a poet.

For in these sentences the word linked or joined to the subject and completing the sense, is called the complement (or completion), both copula and complement forming the predicate.



Of course the ways of enlarging a simple sentence might be multiplied in a greater degree.

*** Reference is made in the following pages to the Public School Latin Primer Rules. This is the meaning of the figures that follow each rule. The more important of these rules are also given in full in Latin and English in parallel columns on pp. 192-206.

FOUR GENERAL RULES.

A.

A FINITE Verb agrees with its Nominative Case in Number and Person. 88.

> Rex pugnat. Reges pugnant. Etc., etc., etc.

Nos pugnamus.

B.

An Adjective agrees with its Substantive in Gender, Number, and Case. 89.

Fortis rex habet peritum ducem.

A Substantive is put in the same Case as that with which it is in apposition. 90.

Rex, fortis vir, pugnat. Rex vincit ducem, fortem virum. Filius regis, sapientis viri, pugnat.

A Relative agrees with its Antecedent in everything but in Case; i.e. in Gender, Number, and Person. 91.

> Rex, quem regina amavit, ibat, etc. Regina, quam rex amavit, ibat, etc. Vidi regem qui ibat, etc. Rex amabit te, O femina, quæ amas reginam.

THE VERB AND ITS NOMINATIVE OR SUBJECT.

т

Every finite Verb must have a Nominative Case as its Subject. 93.

Rex pugnat. Reges pugnant.

This Nominative Case or Subject need not always be put in, but is understood.

Pugnat (understand ille.)
Pugnant (understand illi.)

III.

The Verb must agree with its Nom. Case or Subject in Number (Sing. or Pl.) and in Person (First, Second, Third). 88.

Ego pugna. Nos pugnamus. Tu pugnas. Vos pugnatis. Ille pugnat. Illi pugnant.

IV.

When a Pronoun (ego, tu, ille, nos, vos, illi) is the Nominative Case or Subject, it is only put in for the sake of emphasis or distinction.

Ego pugno, tu fugis. Nos pugnamus, vos fugitis.

But "I fight," "we flee," without any distinction between "I" and. "we," would be simply pugno, fugimus.

ν.

Two or more Substantives of the Singular Number will have a Verb in the Plural Number. 92.

Rex et dux pugnant.

VI.

If the Nominative Case or Subjects are of different Persons (as Ego tu ille), the Verb (in the Plural Number of course) will agree with the First Person rather than with the Second, and with the Second rather than with the Third. 92, 1.

Ego et tu pugnamus. Tu et ille pugnatis.

VII.

Sometimes an Infinitive Mood is the Nominative Case or Subject to a Verb, which Infinitive Mood is then considered a Substantive in the Neuter Gender. 140, I. 26, 4.

Mentiri est improbum.

VIII.

Sometimes a clause is the Nominative Case or Subject; and this is also looked upon as a Neuter Substantive. 156, 3.

Celare suas culpas mentiendo est improbum.

IX.

Though it has been stated that all Verbs have a Nominative Case or Subject, yet there are Impersonal Verbs, of which more will be said (see page 106,107)

THE ADJECTIVE AND SUBSTANTIVE,

T.

The use of the Adjective is to describe the nature of the Substantive with which it goes, i.e., it "qualifies the Substantive."

II.

The Adjective (including the Participle and Adjective Pronoun, which partake of the nature of the Adjective) agrees with the Substantive in Gender, Number, and Case—i.e., if the Substantive be of the Masculine Gender, the Adjective must be Masculine; if the Substantive be of the Singular Number, the Adjective must be Singular; if the Substantive be in the Nominative Case, the Adjective must be in the Nominative, &c.

Bonus rex regit cives.
Boni reges regunt cives.

Rex laudat fortem ducem. Rex laudat fortes duces.

Bonus rex regit cives.

rex being Masculine, bonus is Masculine
rex being Singular, bonus is Singular
rex being Nominative, bonus is Nominative
Boni reges regunt cives.

reges being Masculine, boni is Masculine
reges being Plural, boni is Plural

reges being Nominative, boni is Nominative.

Rex laudat fortem ducem
ducem being Masculine, fortem is Masculine
ducem being Singular, fortem is Singular

ducem being Accusative, fortem is Accusative.

III.

If the Adjective, however, has to go with Substantives, which are of different Genders, it agrees with the Masculine rather than the Feminine; but in things without life it will often be put in the Neuter Gender. 92, 2. 92 (a.)

Rex et regina sunt boni. Labor (m) et ignavia (f.) sunt dissimillima (n.)

IV.

Adjectives are often used by themselves as Substantives to represent either persons or things, 156, as

Multi, many men.
Multa, many things.
Vera dicere est honestum.

APPOSITION.

When two Substantives come together representing the same thing, they are put in the same Case. 90.

Reges, fortes viri, pugnant. Rex amat reginam, bonam feminam.

Filius regis, fortis viri, pugnat. Rex dat ensem duci, bono viro. Rex utitur ense, acuto telo.

But the two Substantives need not necessarily be of the same Number or Gender.

Vixit Thebis magno oppido.

Dedit regi ensem, donum regines.

This is called Apposition—
from appono, to place beside—

a Substantive placed (in meaning) by the side of another Substantive.

To explain this-

Reges, fortes viri, pugnant
As reges and viri are both of them
evidently the same persons referred
to—put in apposition, or placed by
the side of each other—they are
both of them in the same Case, the
Nominative,

Rex dat ensem duci, bono viro.

Here viro, referring to duci, is put in the same Case as duci (Dative). In the last sentence (Rex utitur ense, &c.) it is very plain that telo refers to ense; it is therefore put in the came Case as ense (Ablative).

THE RELATIVE AND ANTECEDENT.

T.

The Relative means the Relative Pronoun "qui," which relates or refers to some person or thing mentioned before.

The Antecedent means the person or thing mentioned before—from ante, before, and cedo, to go.

The Relative and Antecedent are doubtless most difficult for young boys to understand, chiefly because, in whatever Case the Relative Pronoun is, it must, according to the English language, come before its Verb to make sense, and because it has to be taken as near

T.

to its Antecedent as possible. Many boys will parse

Puer fecit hoc,
The boy did this,
who will not be able to parse

Quod puer fecit,
Which the boy did,

though both contain simply a Nominative Case, a Verb, and an Accusative Case. They will stumble at the latter because they have to take the Accusative Case first.

II.

This Relative Pronoun agrees (see p. 31), with its Antecedent (i. e., the word to which

it refers) in everything but Case.

Rex, qui amavit reginam, ibat, &c. Regina, quæ amavit regem, ibat, &c. Reges, quos regina amavit, ibant, &c. Regina, quam rex amavit, ibat, &c. Rex amavit te, O femina, quæ amas reginam.

Taking the first sentence-

Rex, qui amavit reginam, ibat, &c.
rex being Sing., qui is also Sing.
rex being Mas., qui is also Mas.
rex being 3rd Per., qui is also 3rd Per.

But though rex is Nom. and qui is Nom., qui is not the Nom. because rex is, for rex is the Nom. to the Verb ibat, and qui is the Nom. to amavit.

Taking the fourth sentence-

Regina, quam rex amavit, ibat, &c. Regina being Fem., quam is also Fem. Regina being Sing., quam is also Sing.

But regina is Nom. and quam is Acc., because regina is the Nom. to the Verb ibat and quam is the Acc. after the Verb amavit.

III.

The Case of the Relative Pronoun may be any Case which the Verb governs, as—

Ensis, quem dux habet, est acutus

Pauperes, quorum boni miserentur, sunt grati (thankful).

Morbus, cui medicus medetur, est gravis.

Ensis, quo rex utitur, est acutus.

Again—

Rex, cui dux dat ensem, est fortis. Rex, cujus ensis est acutus, est fortis. Rex, a quo civitas gubernatur, est fortis.

Milites, quibuscum dux ibat, sunt fortes.

In the sentences given above it will be seen that in turning them into English the Relative Pronoun, in whatever case it is, is taken before its Verb, that it may come as near to its Antecedent—the word to which it refers—as possible, as—

The sword, which the leader has, &c. which Acc. after has.

The poor, whom the good pity, &c. whom Gen. after pity.

The disease, which the physician, &c. which Dat. after heal.

The sword, which the king uses, &c. which Abl. after uses.

Again —

The king, to whom the leader gives, &c. to whom Dat. after gives.

The king, whose sword is sharp, &c. whose Gen. of the possessor.

The king, by whom the state is, &c. whom Abl. after a.

The soldiers, with whom the general, &c.

whom Abl. after cum.

THE VERB AND ITS ACCUSATIVE OR OBJECT.

I.

All ordinary Transitive Verbs take an Accusative case after them, which Accusative Case is called the nearer object. 95, 96.

Rex laudat ducem.

The word Transitive is made up of two Latin words, trans, across, and eo, to go. To our present purpose it will signify passing over, and it means, when spoken of a Verb, that the action of the Verb passes over to the Noun which governs it.

By an ordinary Transitive Verb, then, is meant a Verb after which you can place some Common Substantive to com plete the sense, as—

I touch.

This will take any such common word, as table, chair, pen, ink, book, cat, dog, kouse, &c.

In other words, there is an action in touch which passes on to table, chair, pen, ink, &c.

II.

A Verb is call Intransitive—that is, not Transitive (in

II.

implying not)—when there is no action in the Verb to pass over

Sto, I stand.
Arbor crescit, the tree grows.
Avis volat, the bird flies.

Here it can be seen that stand, grows, flies are Intransitive, for there is no action to pass over. We need put no Substantive after them to make sense.

Intransitive Verbs then (as a rule) take no Case.

Intransitive Verbs are also called Neuter.

The following are some common Neuter or Intransitive Verbs—

Cado, I fall. Sedeo, I sit. Cubo, I lie down. Sto, I stand. Curro, I run. Vivo, I live.

III.

Some Neuter Verbs, however, do take an Accusative after them, but only an Accusative of some particular word which is of like meaning with the Verb.

Servio servitutem. Ludo aleam. Vivo vitam.

This Accusative is called the Accusative of kindred meaning. 97

THE NOMINATIVE AFTER THE VERB.

Although most verbs take after them an Accusative Case, after some a Nominative appears, a full list of which will be found on

p. 156 of P.S.L.P.

They are—

- 1. Copulative Verbs.
- 2. The Passive of those Verbs which in the Active are called Factitive Verbs.

N.B.—These words—Copulative, Factitive, &c.—are explained, see P.S.L.P. p. 176, and p. 75.

I.

The Copulative Verbs are—

Sum, I am. Fio, I become. Appareo, I appear. Existo, I stand forth. Audio, I am called. Manco, I remain. Nascor, I am born. Videor, I seem. Evado, I turn out.

II.

The following are the passive of some of the principal Factitive Verbs—

> Habeor, I am esteemed. Existimor. I am thought. Nominor, I am named. Appellor, I am called. Dicor, I am said. Creor, I am created.

It will be seen that after these Verbs a Nominative appears, which must be regarded as a Complement, or that which completes the sense.

Examples—

Nemo nascitur sapiens. Poeta evadit orātor.

III.

When, however, the Copulative Verb is in the Infinitive, and is preceded by an Accusative, its Complement will also be in the Accusative.

Dicunt poetam evadere oratorem.

The Latin Primer Rule for is: "Copulative Verbs. whether finite or infinite, generally have a Complement agreeing with the Subject;" but this requires some such explanation as we have given above.

THE GENITIVE AFTER THE VERB.

I.

Some Verbs are followed by the Genitive—Sum when it signifies—127 (b)

Nature Function Token Duty Hominis est (it is the nature) errare. Regis est (it is the duty) imperare recte

TT.

Interest, it imports. Refert, it concerns. 129.

Regis interest regere recte. Regis refert regere recte.

III.

Verbs of Accusing, Acquitting, Condemning, Warning, &c. 133.

These, as well as a Genitive case of the change, take an Accusative of the Object (see p. 12).

Rex accusat ducem ignaviæ.
condemnat ducem multorum
scelerum.
absolvit ducem ignaviæ.
admonet ducem pristinæ
fortunæ.

TV.

Many Verbs of Abounding, Wanting, Enriching, Depriving (and also Potior). 119 (b)

Rex { eget pecuniæ. potitur urbis. liberat ducem culpæ.

These also take an Ablat, see p.

v.

Misereor and miseresco, I pity. 135.

Misereor | pauperum.

Miseror, commiseror, take an Accusative

VT.

Memini, reminiscor, recordor, *I remember*; obliviscor, *I forget* 133 (a).

Rex meminit reminiscitur recordatur obliviscitur parum.

These also take an Acc. (see p.83).

VII.

Piget, it irks; Pudet, it shames; Pœnitet, it repents; Tædet, it disgusts; Miseret, it moves pily—

take a Genitive with an Accusative (see p. 82). 134.

$$\begin{array}{c} \operatorname{Reg} em & \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \operatorname{piget} \\ \operatorname{pudet} \\ \operatorname{pcenitet} \\ \operatorname{twdet} \end{array} \right\} & \operatorname{sceler} um \\ \operatorname{(crimes.)} \end{array}$$

Regem miseret pauperum.

These sentences literally rendered, are—

It irks, it shames, it repents, the king, but in construing, the Accusative should be taken first, as if it were a Nominative.—

The king repents, &c., of his crimes.

THE DATIVE AFTER THE VERB.

I.

Ι

Some Verbs are followed by the Dative. Many of these may be remembered if learned in the following rhyme (See Henry's "First Latin Book," (pp. 62, 63):

A Dative put, remember pray,
After envy, spare, obey.
Persuade, believe, command; to these
Add pardon, succour, and displease;
With vacare "to have leisure,"
And placere "to have pleasure,"
With nubere (of the female said),
The English of it is "to wed;"
Servire add, and add studere,
Heal, favour, hurt, resist, and indulgere.

104, 105, 106.

N.B.—Juvo I please, lædo I hurt, govern an Acc. Jubeo I order governs an Acc. (or Dative).

invidet (envies) parcit spares) paret (obeys) persuadet (persuades) credit (believes) imperat (commands) duci. Rex ignoscit (pardons) succurrit (succours) displicet (displeases) placet (pleases) favet (favours) nocet (hurts) resistit (opposes)

Rex vacat (has leisure for) philosophiæ. Regina nubit (marries) regi. Rex servit (is the slave of) duci. Rex studet (is eager after) literis. Medicus medetur (heals) morbo. Rex indulget (indulges in) dolori.

II.

Verbs compounded with the following Particles—106 (a.)

bene, male, satis, re, ad, ante, con, in, inter, de, ob, sub, super, post et præ.

benefacit (does good to)

(speaks ill maledicit of) satisfacit (satisfies) resistit (resists) adhæret (keeps close antecellit (surpasses) confidit (trusts in) infert bellum (wages Rex war on) duci. interdicit (forbids) bellum detrahit (takes away from) pecuniam obstat (opposes) subvenit (assists) superfuit (has out-

lived)

præstat (is superior to)

Rex postfert (sacrifices) suas opes libertati.

Many Verbs, however, so compounded are construed with the Accusative or with the Case of their own Preposition—the Preposition being of course repeated.

III.

Sum, with its compounds except possum. 107 (b).

Absum, I am absent.
Adsum, I am present, stand by.
Desum, I am wanting.
Insun, I am in, or upon.
Intersum, I take part in.
Obsum, I am against, injure.
Præsum, I am at the head of.
Prosum, I am serviceable.
Subsum, I am under.
Supersum, I survive.

est causa doloris duci.
abest reginæ.
adest duci.
interfuit præliis.
obfuit duci.
præfuit exercitui.
prodest multis.
superfuit reginæ.

III.

Virtus deest (is wanting to) regi. Magna fortitudo inerat duci. Dux subest arbori.

IV.

Est, sunt, when used for habeo, take a Dative. 107 (c.)

Est mihi pater—There is a father to me; i.e., I have a father.

V.

Sum and other Verbs are sometimes followed by two Datives, one being used as a Complement, the other being the Dative of the Recipient. 108.

Mare est exitio nautis—The sea is a destruction to sailors. (See p. .)

THE ABLATIVE AFTER THE VERB.

I.

Some Verbs are followed by the Ablative. 119 (IX. a.)

Fungor, to perform.
Fruor, to enjoy.
Utor, to use.
Vescor, to eat (feed upon.)
Potior, to get possession of.
Dignor, to deem worthy.

Rex { fungitur munere ducis. fruitur victorid. utitur pecunid. vescitur carne. potitur urbe. dignatur se honore.

Potior takes also a Gen. (see p.79).

II.

Verbs of Abounding, Wanting, Enriching, Depriving. 119 (b.)

Rex abundat (abounds) divitiis.
eget (is in need of) pecuniâ.
locupletavit (enriched) ducem auro.
fraudat (defrauds) me pe-

These also take a Gen. (p.79.).

III.

Verbs when compounded with Prepositions, ab, de, ex. 122 (a.) Consul magistratu abiit (retired from office.)
Rex se deject (threw himself down equo.
Dux exiit (went out of) domo.

VERBS WHICH TAKE TWO CASES.

ACCUSATIVE AND GENITIVE.

T.

Verbs of Accusing, Acquitting, Condemning, Warning.

II.

Figet, it irks.
Pudet, it shames.

Pœnitet, it repents. Tædet, it disgusts.

Miseret, it moves pity.

$$\label{eq:legen} Regen \left\{ \begin{array}{l} piget \\ pudet \\ pœnitet \\ tædet \end{array} \right. \left. \begin{array}{l} scelerum \\ \end{array} \right.$$

Regem miseret pauperum.

ACCUSATIVE AND DATIVE.

Verbs of Comparing, Giving, Restoring, Promising, Owing, Paying, Telling, Threatening, Withdrawing.

Rex confert magna parvis.

In all these sentences the Accusative is the Case of the nearer Object. and the Dative the Case of the remoter Object.

VERBS WHICH TAKE EITHER OF TWO CASES.

GENITIVE OR ACCUSATIVE.

Memini, I remember. Recordor, I remember. Reminiscor, I remember Obliviscor, I forget.

Rex { meminit reminiscitur recordatur obliviscitur results suarum culparum (or suas culpas.)

GENITIVE OR ABLATIVE.

See pp.79.81.

Verbs of Abounding or Wanting, Enriching or Depriving, as also potior.

Rex eget pecuniæ (or pecuniæ). Rex potitur urbis (or urbe). Rex liberat ducem culpæ (or culpæ).

VERBS WHICH TAKE A DOUBLE CASE.

TWO ACCUSATIVES—PER-SON AND THING.

Verbs of Asking, Teaching, Entreating, Demanding, Admonishing, Concealing.

Rex craft for ducem. docuit filium literas. crat te hoc. poscit ducem pacem. monuit ducem ea. colavit ea ducem.

TWO ACCUSATIVES—
OBJECT AND COMPLEMENT,

Verbs of making, Calling, Thinking, &c.

Rex { fecit militem ducem. vocavit urbem Romam putat ducem stultum

TWO DATIVES.

Sum with other words.

Filius est dedecori matri—The son is a disgrace to his mother. Vertis id vitio mihi—You impute it as a fault to me.

ADJECTIVES AND THEIR CASES.

It should be noted here, that although logically the construction of Cases with Verbs and Adjectives ought to be considered under one head, it has been found convenient in this very elementary work to treat the Verbs and Adjectives apart.

Adjectives, like Verbs, take certain Cases after them. We will give them in the following order.

- 1. Those which take the Genitive.
- 2. Those which take the Dative.
- 3. Those which take the Ablative.
- 4. Those which take the Genitive or Ablative.

THE GENITIVE AFTER THE ADJECTIVE.

I

The Genitive of the Thing Measured follows words denoting quantity, such as satis, parum, &c., and Neuter Adjectives, such as aliquid, multum, &c. 131.

Rex habet satis sapientiæ (sufficient wisdom.)
Rex habet multum pecuniæ (much money.)

II.

Adjectives which signify-

skill, knowledge, desire, fear, care, memory, power, innocence,

and their contraries -132 (I.), 133 (II.)-

take a Genitive after them-

Rex est { peritus belli.
 negligens (regardless of) officii.
 cupidus laudis.
 potens (master of) sui
 conscius recti.
 memor beneficii.
 timidus mortis.
 insous mendacii (falsehood)

THE DATIVE AFTER THE ADJECTIVE.

Adjectives which signify-

advantage, disadvantage, likeness, unlikeness. pleasure, displeasure, submission, nearness, &c., &c.

take a Dative after them. 105, 106.

Rex est dilis patrix, inutilis exercitui. similis deo, dissimilis patri. gratus omnibus. supplex reginæ. finitimus (near akin to) pootæ

THE ABLATIVE AFTER THE ADJECTIVE.

I.

The following Adjectives take an Ablative—119 (IX. a)—

dignus, worthy; indignus, unworthy; contentus, contented; fretus, relying; præditus, endued.

ex est dignus culpa.
indignus laude.
contentus parvo,
præditus virtute.

Rex fretus divitiis abiit

II.

As also the Substantives opus and usus—119 (IX. a).

Opus est mihi pecunia. Usus est mihi pecunia.

III.

Adjectives which take a Geni tive or Ablative. 119 (IX. b.)

abounding, wanting, enriching, depriving.

Teria est dives equorum (or equis). Rex est expers metus (or metu).

DIFFERENT USES OF CASES.

We have given the Cases as they come after Verb or Adjective. We proceed now to consider some of the different uses of the different Cases, and to give examples.

NOMINATIVE.

T.

The Neminative as Subject. 93.

Rex pugnat.

II.

Nominative put in Apposition. 90.

Rex, filius ducis, pugnat.

III.

Nominative used in exclamations with or without an Interjection. 138.

Infanà im !—Unutterable ! Ecce nova turba !—Lo ! a new disturbance ! IV.

Nominative, with quam, after Comparative. 124, xiv. (I.)

Ferrum est durius quam cera. Nominative after certain Verbs (see p.78).

VOCATIVE.

The Vocative is said to stand out of the sentence, as it never dopends on any word. 137.

O Rex, pugnas.

ACCUSATIVE.

I.

Accusative as Subject of the Infinitive. 93 (2).

Scio regem pugnare.

N.B.—This will be fully explained in another place (see p.100).

II.

Accusative put in Apposition. 90.

Rex laudat ducem, fortem virum.

III.

Accusative of Respect. 100.

Rex tremit artus.

Rex est nudus lacertos.

IV.

Accusatives used in Exclamations with or without an Interjection. 138.

Me miserum, wretched me! En quatuor aras! Lo, four altars!

V.

Accusative, Duration of Time 102 (1).

Rex regnavit duos annos.

VI.

Accusative, Measure of Space. 102 (2).

Muri erant duos pedes alti. See Ablative of Measure, p.

VII.

Accusative, after certain Prepositions (see list, p.58).

Rex dixit contra spem.

VIII.

Accusative of Place Whither, 101.

Rex ivit Romam.

IX.

Accusative, with quam, after Comparative. 124 (xiv. 2)
Puto mortem leviorem quam dedecus.

Accusative often Transitive

Accusative after Transitive Verbs, as already mentioned.

GENITIVE.

O.L

T.

Genitive of the Author and Possessor. 127.

Rex est filius ducis.

II.

Genitive put in Apposition. 90.

Rex est filius ducis, fortis viri.

III.

Genitive of Quality (with Epithet. 128 (II.)

Rex est vir magnæ fortitudinis.

III.

Ablative may be also used (see p. 88.)

IV.

Elliptic Genitives. (128) (a.)

Parvi, of little value.
Minoris, of less value.
Minimi, of very little value.
Magni, of great value.
Pluris, of more value.
Plurimi, of high value.
Tanti, of so great value or price.
Quanti, of what price.
Maximi. of very great price.

Maximi. of very great price.

Rex emit fundum magni, at a great price.

Genitive after certain Verbs (see p.79.) and Adjectives.

DATIVE.

Τ.

Dative in Apposition. 90. Rex dat librum duci, forti viro

TT

With the exclamations, hei, alas! væ, woe! 139.

He mihi! Væ regi!

III.

Dative after certain Verbs (see p.80). 104, 105, 106.

ABLATIVE.

I.

Ablative in Apposition. 90.

Rex utitur ense, telo acuto.

II.

Ablative after the Comparative degree. 124 (XIV.)

Rex est fortior duce.

III.

Ablative after certain Prepositions (see list). 122 (XII.)

Dux dicebat coram rege.

After some when compounded.

Rex abiit magistratu.

IV.

Ablative of the Agent takes the Preposition, a, ab. 122 (XII.b).

Rex culpatur a reginâ.

v.

Ablative of Cause (a.)

Rex est bonus amore virtutis.

VI.

Ablative of the Instrument. (b.)

Rex defendit se manibus.

VII.

Ablative of Manner (c)

Rex vicit ducem fraude.

Excepting in a few phrases Ablative of Manner without Epithet raquires cum.

VIII.

Ablative of Condition. (d.)

Rex est fortis mea sententia.

IX.

Ablative of Quality with Epithet. (e.)

Rex est benigno vultu.

X.

Ablative of Respect. (f.)

Rex augitur (is distressed) animo.

XI.

Ablative of Price. (q.)

Rex emit fundum magna pecunia.

XII.

Ablative of Measure. (h.)

Murus erat latus pede (a foot broad.)

XIII.

Ablative of Matter. (i.)

Cibus ducis constat carne, &c.

XIV.

Ablative of Time When? 120(X.)

Rex pugnavit hieme.

Rex veniet biduo (in two days).

Romulus vixit paucis annis ante Numam, multis annis post Homerum.

XV.

Ablative of Place Where? 121 (XI. B.)

See Locative Case, below. Rex vixit Neapoli et postea Thebis. Templa patent (are open) tota urbe.

XVI.

Ablative of a Town when the question is Whence? 121 (XI.C.)

Rex fugit Roma.
So also with domo and rure.

XVII.

The Ablative of Place is put without a Preposition, when the question is By what road? 121 (XI. A.)

Rex*ibat præcipiti via.

XVIII.

Ablative Absolute. (125)

Urbe condita, Romulus factus est rex.

This Ablative Absolute, however, we must explain at greater length.

LOCATIVE CASE.

I.

See Latin Primer. 121 (B, a.)

"Place Where" is put in a Case resembling the Genitive Singular if the word be of the First or Second Declension, Singular Number; if not, in a Case resembling the Ablative.

TT.

Like to the above are used. 121 (B, b).

humi, on the ground. belli comi, at home, milities at the

ruri, in the country.

Rex est fortis domi et militie.

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.*

The Latin Primer Rule is as follows:

A Substantive combines with a Participle in the Ablative which is called Absolute.

Now this requires some explanation which a teacher will always supply when possible vivā voce to his pupil or class. But some people take up the study of Latin without any help but that derived from Books. Hence many explanations in the Author's Books will, of course, be passed over by those who, in a much better way, will make the explanation by word of mouth.

In turning Latin into English, the rule for construing is this:

Take the Ablative Case of the Substantive as if it were a Nominative—by which I mean, take it without putting any sign before it—and then take the Participle either directly, or as soon after as you can.

It must be noted, however, that it is not always a Substantive that is used; but sometimes it may be an Adjective (used as a Substantive), and sometimes the Relative Pronoun.

EXAMPLE 1.—"In eodem quondam prato pascebantur anseres et grues. Adveniente domino prati, grues,' &c., &c.

The Latin words in italics form an Ablative Absolute. Follow the Rule given. Take the Ablative Case of the Substantive, domino, but put no sign to it—saying, Domino, "the master;" prati, "of the field;" and then the Participle (which you will find in the Ablative Case, ad veniente, "coming up." "The master of the field coming up, the cranes (easily flew away)."

EXAMPLE 2.—" Mures aliquando habuerunt consilium quomodo a fele caverent. Multis aliis propositis. omnibus placuit," &c.

Multis aliis propositis is an Ablative Absolute in the Plural Number. There is no Substantive to take, but there are two Adjectives. So we take multis aliis, putting no sign before it, and say, Multis aliis, "manyother things;" propositis, having been proposed placuit, "it pleased," &c.,&c.,&c.

^{*} N.B.--Absolute, i.e. released (absolutus) so to speak from government.

EXAMPLE 3.—" Agricola senex quum mortem sibi propinquare sentiret, filios convocavit, quos, ut fieri solet, interdum discordare noverat, et fascem virgultorum afferri jussit. Quibus allatis, filios hortabatur, &c. &c.

Quibus allatis is an Ablative Absolute, the Relative Pronoun being used. We take quibus (agreeing with virgultis, understood), putting no sign before it, and say, Quibus, "which;" allatis, "having been brought;" hortabatur, "he exhorted," &c.

Sometimes instead of a Participle another Substantive (or an Adjective) is used.

Cæsare duce vincemus.

Cæsar, being our leader, we shall conquer.

There will be still more difficulty in knowing when to use an Ablative Absolute in turning English into Latin.

The King, when he has conquered his enemies, will return home.

Here it is said that the King will do a certain thing after another thing has been done—that he will return home when he has conquered his enemies; when he has conquered his enemies

may therefore be put into an Ablative Absolute, as—

Rex, hostibus victis, red bit domum.

If you are my leader, I shall conquer.

If you are my leader may be an Ablative Absolute.

Te duce, vincam.

Care must be taken not to put in the Ablative Case a Substantive having a participle agreeing with it when it forms the subject of the Verb.

Cæsar, being made consul, departed

We must not put the words Casar being made Consul as an Ablative Absolute; if we did, we should leave "departed" without any Nominative Case.

Cæsar factus consul, (not Cæsare facto consule) abiit.

If, however, we say;

Cæsar, his enemies being conquered, departed.

we can put his enemies being conquered into an Ablative Absolute (victis hostibus), as it does not form the Nominative Case or Subject to the Verb.

QUAM AFTER THE COMPARATIVE DEGREE.

There are two ways of expressing the word "than" in Latin after a comparative degree (124 xiv.).

I. By the word quam, which is followed by any case, the things compared being in the same case.

Iron is harder than wax. Ferrum est durius quam cera.

They say that iron is harder than wax. Dicunt ferrum esse duriorem quam ceram.

Sooner forget injuries than kindnesses. Citius obliviscere injuriarum quam beneficiorum.

II. By the Ablative case, quam being left out.

Iron is harder than wax. Ferrum est durius cerâ (Abl.).

I think that death is lighter than disgrace.
Puto mortem esse leviorem dedecore.

But in comparison with cases other than the Nominative or Accusative quan must be used, as also where its omission would cause any ambiguity.

This is more useful to me than to you. Hoc est utilius mihi quam tibi.

I have lost more money than you (have). Ego amisi plus pecuniæ quam tu.

He is richer in lands than in servants. Est ditior agris quam ministris.

SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

One very important thing for a boy to remember is the proper Sequence of Tenses.

The Present, Future, and Perfect (with "have"), are followed by Present or Perfect Subjunctive, or Future Participle in rus with Sim.

The Imperfect, Pluperfect, and Perfect are followed by Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive, or Future Participle in rus with Essem.

Quæro, I ask.
Quæram, I will ask.
Quæsivi, I have asked.
Quid acturus sis, what you are going to do.

Quærebam, I was asking.
Quæsivi, I asked.
Quæsiveram, I had asked.
Quæsiveram, I had asked.
Quid acturus esses, what you were about to do.

Let these points also be noted.

Dicit'se amare, he says that he is loving.

Dixit se amare, he said that he was loving.

Dicit se amavisse, he says that he has loved, or loved. Dixit se amavisse, he said that he had loved.

Pollicetur se amaturum esse, he promises that he will love. Pollicitus est se amaturum esse, he promised that he would love.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

1.

The Verb Infinite consists of Verb-Nouns.

- (1.) The Infinitive.
- (2.) The Gerunds
 (3.) The Supines

 which supply cases to Infinitive.
- (4.) Participles.

 See Latin Primer, 45 (II.)

TT.

The Infinitive with the Gerunds, Participles, and Supine in um, governs the same cases as the Verb Finite. 142 (III.) Dux vult obedire magistro.

Dux cupidus est obediendi magistro.

III.

The Infinitive is often used as a Substantive for the Nominative or Accusative Case. 140 (I.)

Discere (Nom) est difficile.

Puer dicit (calls it) miserum mori

(Acc.)

IV

It is used Obliquely (or in what is known as Enuntiatio Obliqua) with Accusative of Subject. 140 (3); 93 (2).

Aiunt terram esse rotundam.

v.

It is used in narration for a Finite Verb. 140 (2).

Fors omnia regere. Chance governed all things.

VI.

It is used to carry on the construction of a Verb or Adjective. 140 (4).

Puir voluit discere multa Puer paratus (ready) discere multa

GERUNDS.

T.

There are three Gerunds ending in dum, di, do, reckoned as part of the Verb Infinite, and, as mentioned above, forming as it were cases when the Infinitive is declined as a Verbal Substantive.

II.

These Gerunds are called

- 1. Accusative in dum, Amandum, loving.
- 2. Genitive in di, Amandi, of loving.
- 3. Dative or Ablative in do, Amando, to or for or by loving.

·III.

The Accusative Gerund is joined to Prepositions, 141 (1.)

Puer natus est ad agendum.

IV.

The Genitive Gerund is joined to Substantives and Adjectives. 141 (2).

Rex didicit artem scribendi. Rex est cupidus bene scribendi.

v.

The Dative Gerund is joined to Nouns and Verbs 141 (3.)

Puer dat operam discendo.

VI.

The Ablative Gerund is of cause or manner, or is used with a Preposition. 141 (4.)

Puer discit docendo. Puer vincit pugnando. Reges rixantur (quarrel) de spoliando.

SUPINES.

I.

There are two Supines called—
1. Supine in um, Amatum, to love.
3. Supine in u, Amatu, to be loved.

II.

The Supine in um is an Accusative after Verbs of motion; it is thus equivalent to "ut" with the Subjunctive. 141 (5.)

Puer it (goes) dormitum.

This Supine, used with iri,
which is the Present Infini-

II.

tive Passive of eo, to go, forms the Infinitive of the Future Passive. 141 (5 a.) Dux sperat prolia non pugnatum iri

III.

The Supine in u follows the indeclinable Substantives fas, ne fas opus & certain Adjectives, & is an Abl. of Respect. 141 (6.)

Difficile est dictu.

It is difficult to say, or to be said, or in saying.

PARTICIPLES.

T.

There are Four Participles.

- 1. Present in ans or ens, as—
 Amans, monens.
- 2. Participle in dus (the Gerundive), as—

Amandus.

- 3. Perfect in us, as—Amatus.
- 4. Future in rus, as—

They are arranged in this order for the sake of their being more easily formed, as follows:

- The Present Participle is formed from the present tense by changing o into ans or ens, as amo, amans; rego, regens.
- N.B.—In the Second Congugation it will be by changing co into ens, as moneo, monens.

- 2. The Participle in dus (Gerundive) is formed from the present Participle by throwing away s and adding dus, as amans, amandus; regens, regendus.
- The Perfect Participle is formed from the Supine in um by changing um into us, as amatum, amatus; rectum, rectus.
- 4. The Future Participle is formed from the Supine in u by adding rus, as amatu, amaturus; rectu, recturus.
- N.B.—It will be seen that before the Participles can be formed in this way the Supines must be known.

II.

These Participles are also classed in another way:

Two Active-

- 1. Present in ans or ens.
- 2. Future in rus.

Two Passive.

- 1. Perfect in us.
- 2. Participle in dus.

THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

I.

The Present Participle is used in Latin Prose to express continuous action, as—

The boy went, carrying his books with him.

Puer ibat gerens suos libros secum.

That is, he was carrying his books all the time he was going.

II.

It must not be used to express a single instantaneous action, as—

Drawing his sword (—really, "having drawn his sword"), the king attacked the enemy.

Ense stricto (or) quum ensem strinxisset (not ensem stringens) rex impetum fecit in hostes.

III.

The pupil will hardly require to be reminded that though ing is the ending of the Present Participle, yet that a word may end in "ing" and yet not be translated by a Present Participle in Latin, as—

 Learning is useful. Learning here will be translated by the Infinitive Mood, discere.

- The love of hunting. Of hunting will be the Genitite Gerund, Venandi; or the Substantive Venationis.
- We learn by teaching. By teaching will, of course be the Ablative Gerund.

PARTICIPLE IN DUS.

This has been fully explained as *The Gerundive*, pp. 98, 99.

THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE PASSIVE.

1

The Perfect Participle Passive is the one most frequently found in Latin, as Amatus loved, having been loved. It is also the Participle generally used in the Ablative Absolute.

Cæsar having been made consul departed.

Cæsar factus consul abiit.

Cæsar, Brutus having been made consul, departed. Cæsar, Bruto facto consule, abiit.

II.

We must remember that Intrasitive Verbs have no Perf. Part. Pass., such as "ventus" from "venio," and that the Perf. Part. of a Depoment Verb, means having (and not having been), as usus, having used from utor.

FUTURE PARTICIPLE.

T.

The Future Part: always ends in urus and the English is "about to," "going to," "intending to," and also simply "to" Amaturus, "about to love," "going to love," "intending to love," or simply, "to love," with, of course, a future meaning.

П.

This Future Part: is used with the Infinitive of the Verb

TT.

sum to form the Future Infinitive Active.

The boy said that he would come. Puer dixit se venturum esse.

III.

This Future Purt: is sometimes used to express a purpose instead of ut with the Subjunctive.

The boy goes away to consult his father.

Puer abit consulturus patrem.

THE GERUNDIVE.

I.

The Gerundive is anothername, and no doubt a more correct one, for the old-fashioned Participle in dus. It is of like form with the Gerund, hence the name Gerundive. It is sometimes used in place of the Gerund—

Puer est studiosus audiendi patrem.

The boy is very desirous of hearing his father.

Here we have the Genitive Gerund with the Accusative Case after it, but instead of this the Gerundive may be used. We put our Substantive in the case we want it to be (here his father will be the Genitive) and make our Gerundive agree with it. 143.

Puer est studiosus patris audiendi. Rex interfectus est in liberanda urbe.

This is called the Gerundive Attraction, and should only be used when the Verb governs the Accusative.

II.

The English of the Gerundive with *sum* is "is to be," "is meet to be," "must be."

Amandus est, He is to be loved, must be loved, is meet to be loved.

III.

When the word must has to be turned into Latin we must generally use the Gerundive in agreement with the Substantive, provided the Verb governs an Accusative. 144 (IV. 2.)

The gate must be shut. Porta claudenda est.

The food must be taken. Cibus sumendus est.

The state must be ruled. Respublica regenda est

IV.

When the Gerundive of neuter or intransitive Verbs, as "live," "die," has to be used, it must be used Impersonally in the neuter Gender with "est," and what might be supposed to be the Nominative Case is to be turned into the Dative. 144 (IV, I. a.)

We must live well. Bene vivendum est nobis.

I must live well. Bene vivendum est mihi.

He must live well. Bene vivendum est illi.

The boy must live well Puero bene vivendum est.

V.

When the English Nominative means "we," or "people in general," it is generally left out.

We must live well.
Bene vivendum est (nobis).
We must die.
Moriendum est (nobis).

VI.

If this Gerundive comes from a Verb which governs the Dative Case (as *credo*), the sentence is a little more puzzling, as there will then be two Datives in the sentence—the Dative after the Gerundive (Agent) and the Dative of the Object after the Verb. 144 (IV. 1, b).

We must believe good people.

i.e.,

Good people must be believed by us. Credendum est nobis bonis hominibus.

But in instances of this kind, where the sense would be doubtful, the agent is sometimes expressed by a or ab with the Ablative, as—

A nobis credendum est bonis hominibus.

Sometimes, however, the agent may be left out (see v.) where its omission can cause no ambiguity, and the sentence stand,

Credendum est bonis hominibus.

VII.

Let the pupil study well these sentences, of which we give both the Latin and the English.

We must labour.
Laborandum est (nobis).
The wicked must die.
Improbis moriendum est.
We must believe.
Credendum est (nobis).
We must believe the wise.
Credendum est sapientibus.
(Dat, of O

(Dat. of Object).

We must read the book.
Liber legendus est nobis,
We must fear the wicked
Improbi nobis timendi sunt.
The wicked must fear.
Improbis metuendum est.
We must pardon the boys.
Ignoscendum est pueris
(Dat. of Object.)

VIII.

"Must" and "ought," are to be expressed in Latin, however, sometimes by the Impersonal Verb oportet—

We ought to—we must—believe you Oportet nos credere volis.

Or by necesse est, it is necessary, We must obey our parents. Necesse est nobis parere parentibus.

IX.

There are yet, however, other senses in which must is used, and the Latin will therefore be altogether different—

You must hear me, i.e., nothing shall prevent your hearing me. Nihil obstabit quominus audias me.

ACCUSATIVE CASE AND INFINITIVE MOOD.

This form of expression, like that of the Ablative Absolute, is also one which beginners are very slow to learn, but a few words of explanation and example should make it plain.

This Accusative and Infinitive is called Enuntiatio (bliqua or Cblique (Indirect) Enunciation, or statement.

The Latin Primer Rule is-

"The Subject of an Infinitive is put in the Accusative."

It having been just previously stated that

"The Subject of a Finite Verb is a Nominative."

And the two examples it gives

Anni fugiunt. Years flee.
Constat annos fugere. It is evident
that years flee.
(I.atin Primer, 93. 1, 2.)

In the first example we have a Finite Verb (fugiunt) with the Nominative (anni); and in the second example we have the Infinitive Verb (Verb in the Infinitive Mood) with the Accusative annos.

As with the Ablative Absolute it will be well to take this as found in Latin, that the Pupil may first learn how to construe it when he sees it in a Latin Scntence. This will enable him also to know how to turn the Oblique Enunciation into Latin, though here again the more difficult thing will be to know when to use the Accusative and Infinitive, and when to use ut with the Subjunctive Mood.

Let us look carefully at the following sentence, and see how we ought to construe it.

Videmus aves auctumno in alias terras migrare.

We see that birds migrate into other lands in autumn.

Here we have an Accusative Case (aves), and an Infinitive Mood (migrare). We take videmus, according to the old, but never-to-be-forgotten, rule—"Take the Nominative Case, first, and, if there is not one, take the Verb, and put in a Nominative;"—then we will

take aves, as the Accusative Case, and Subject of the Infinitive Mood migrare; before the Accusative Case, we will put in the most important word "THAT"; and, as migrare is the Present Infinitive, we will construe it as if it were the Third Person Plural of the Present Indicative—videmus, we see aves that birds migrare migrate.

In turning such a Sentence into Latin — We see that birds migrate, we leave out the word "that," turn what might be the Nominative into the Accusative, and put the Verb in the Infinitive Mood; instead of, as learners might think they were to do, using "ut" with the Subjunctive.

But here sometimes is the difficulty—the knowing when to use the Accusative and Infinitive, and when to use "ut" with the Subjunctive. The explanation however that seems most satisfactory is—

When before the word "that" in English you can insert the words "as a matter of fact,"

then in Latin the Accusative with Infinitive is used, as-

- 1. They say (as a matter of fact that the earth is round.
 - Aiunt TERRAM ESSE rotundam.
- It is certain (as a matter of fact) that the earth moves round the sun.
 - Constat TERRAM MOVERI circum solem.
- 3. We believe (as a matter of fact) that God is the Creator of all things.
 - Credimus DEUM ESSE Creatorem omnium rerum.

But we enter more particularly into this in the following pages, which we head with the word "THAT."

Reverting, however, for a moment to the mode of construing such sentences as we have given, we see that in all these we have first to put in the word "that," take the Accusative Case as if it were a Nominative, then take the Infinitive Mood and construe it, as if it were the Indicative Mood. And as in the first and third sentences the Accusative comes before esse (as the Subject), we take care to have the Accusative after esse (as the Complement).

"THAT" AND "UT."

There are two common ways of expressing "THAT" in Latin—

1. Accusative and Infinitive.

We hear that the boy is sick. Audinus puerum esse ægium.

2. "Ut" with the Subj.

The boy is so idle that he has learned nothing.

Puer est tam ignavus ut didicerit nihil.

But when to express "that" by the Accusative and Infinitive, and when by "ut" with the Subjunctive, is no doubt very puzzling. We give here some very simple rules and explanations.

T.

Use the Acc. and Infin. after Verbs of saying, thinking, knowing, hearing, perceiving, &c., and with such words as constat, manifestum est, fama est, &c., &c.

The boy says that he has learned many things well.

It is certain that the boy has learned It is evident many things well.

Puer dicit Puer putat } Se didicisse multa bene. Constat puerum didicisse multa bene. II.

"Ut" with the Subjunctive however, is used generally after

Accidit, it happens.
Reliquum est, it remains.
Sequitur, it follows.

And many other like words.

Accidit ut puer puniatur. Reliquum est ut puer eat domum. Sequitur ut puer sit domi.

III.

When "to," the ordinary sign of the Infinitive, can be turned into "that," "in order that," it expresses a purpose and must be rendered by "ut" with the Subjunctive, as—

The boy was sent to school to learn (i.e., that, in order that, he might learn, i.e., for the purpose of learning).

Tuer missus est ad ludum ut disceret.

IV.

After "so" and "such," "ut" with the Subjunctive is used to express a consequence.

The boy is so idle that he has learned nothing.

Puer est tam ignavus ut didiceri nibil

V.

The word "that" is also used after Verbs of doubting, if preceded by a negative or a question, &c., in which case it must be translated by "quin," and "quin" takes the Subjunctive;

There is no doubt that the boy loves this mother very much.

Non est dubium quin (=qui non)
Quis dubitat quin (=qui non)
puer amet matrem valde.

VI.

When "that not" can be turned into "lest,' it is called a negative PURPOSE, and must be translated by "ne."

The boy is sent to school that he may not be ignorant of letters.

Puer mittitur ad ludum ne (that not, lest) sit ignarus literarum.

But when "that not" is used to express a negative consequence, "ut non" must be used.

He was so idle as not to learn many things.

Erat tamignavus ut non disceret multa

VII.

When there is a comparative in the dependent clause, the word "that" must be translated by "quo," and requires the Subjunctive, as—

The boy is punished that he may be the more industrious.

Puer punitur quo sit diligentior.

VIII.

With words of fearing, "ne" and "ut" seem to exchange places; "that" must be translated by "ne" "that not" by "ut," as—

I fear that the boy will not come. Vereor ut puer veniat.

I fear that the boy will come, i.e., I am afraid lest he come.

Vereor ne puer veniat.

IX.

After words expressing hindrance use quominus with the Subjunctive,

What prevents the boy from going home?

Quid obstat quominus puer eat domum?

X.

It has been said that when "that" introduces a purpose, it must be translated by "ut" with the Subjunctive; but sometimes the idea of purpose is not clearly brought out in the English sentence, as, e.g., after the Verbs—

Advise, ask, command (not jubeo), Exhort, beg, strive (not conor),

where, nevertheless, a purpose is implied, and therefore "ut" with the Subjunctive is used, as—

Moneo te ut bene vivas.

I advise you to live well.

Impero tibi ut bene vivas.

I command you to live well.

OBLIQUE STATEMENT.

An Oblique Statement is ordinarily formed by the Infinitive Clause (Accusative with Infinitive) and depends on an Impersonal Verb, or a Verb of declaring, thinking, perceiving, &c.

In Oblique Statement all the *principal* Verbs will stand in the Infinitive Mood, whereas all the *Subordinate* Verbs, *i.e.*, the Verbs in the Subordinate Clauses (provided they express the words and opinions of the original speaker) will be in the Subjunctive.

Cæsar "Plura sunt" inquit "quæ volo dicere tibi." (Direct.)
Cæsar said, "There are more things which I wish to mention to you."

Here Sunt is the principal Verb and Volo the Subordinate Verb; therefore in Oratio Obliqua the sentence will run thus—

Cæsar dixit plura esse quæ vellet dicere ci. (Oblique.)

Cæsar said, that there were more things which he wished to mention to him.

QUI.

Qui requires the Subjunctive when there is implied-

- (1.) In order that, Litteras scripsi quibus (= tu iis) puerum.
- (2.) Since, Pudet me tui qui (= quum tu) tam ignavus sis.
- (3.) Such that, Sunt qui (= ejusmodi ut) discant multa.
- (4.) Although, Ego, qui (= quamvis ego) senex sim, disco multa.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Many pages might here be written on the Subjunctive Mood, but we will be content with giving the principal conjunctions which are followed by the Subjunctive Mood.

I.

Consecutive—ut, so that; quin, but that.

The boy is so foolish that he knows nothing.

Puer est ita stultus ut nihil sciat.

There is no doubt but that these things are true.

Non est dubium quin (=ut non) have vera sint.

Who is there who does not ween?

Quis est quin (=qui non) fleat?

Final—ut, in order that. Quo, in order that.

ne, lest, that not. Quominus, but that.

I will strive to conquer, i.e. in order that I may conquer.

Enitar ut vincam.

I will strive that you may not conquer (i.e. lest you should).

Enitar ne vincas.

I will strive in order that I may conquer the more easily. Enitar quo facilius vincam.

What hinders me from conquering (i.e. but that I may conquer)?

Quid obstat quominus (=ut eo minus) vincam?

III.

CAUSAL—quum, since.
Since these things are so, I will go.
Quæ quum ita sint, ibo.

IV.

CONDITIONAL—Dum, modo, dummodo, provided that.

The general will conquer provided that he fears nothing.

Dux vincet dum nihil metuat.

٧.

CONCESSIVE—Licet, quamvis, ut, although.

Although those things are true, I will not go.

Ut ea vera sint non ibo.

VI.

COMPARATIVE—Tanquam, ceu, velut, quasi, as if.

You talk as if I were foolish.

Loqueris tanquam stultus sim.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

T.

Impersonal Verbs are those which have no Personal Pronoun as Subject, and are used only in the Third Person Singular (Ind. and Conj.) and in the Infinitive Mood.

It hails, grandinat.
It vexes me, me piget.

For the Conjugation of Impersonal Verbs see pp. 61, 62, of the Latin Primer.

II.

The greater number of the Impersonal Verbs are of the second conjugation. We give those that are most commonly used.

I. Conjugation.

Delectat, it delights.
Juvat, it delights.
Constat, it is evident.
Tonat, it thunders.
Fulgurat, it lightens.
Graudinat, it hails.

II.—Conjugation.

Oportet, it behoves.
Decet, it becomes.
Dedecet, it is unseemly.
Piget, it irks.
Pudet, it shames.
Pœnitet, it repents.
Tædet, it disgusts.
Miseret, it moves pity.
Libet, it pleases.
Licet, it is lawful.
Liquet, it is clear.
Attinet, it relates.
Pertinet, it belongs.

III. Conjugation.
Accidit, it happens.
Contingit, it befalls
Ningit, it snows.
Pluit, it rains.
Lucescit, it dawns.
Vesperascit, it grows late.

IV. Conjugation.
Convenit, it suits.
Evenit, it turns out.
Expedit, it is expedient.

Irregular.
Interest, it imports.
Refert, it concerns.

III.

Intransitive Verbs also, and Verbs which take a Dative Case after them if used in the PassiveVoice, are used impersonally

There is playing by me, or I play. Luditur a me.

I am believed. Creditur mihi.

IV.

The Neuter of the Gerundive is often used impersonally.

I must play.—There must be playing by me. Ludendum est mihi.

V.

In using Impersonal Verbs the different persons, *I*, thou, he, &c., are expressed by the different cases the Verbs take after them.

The following are used with the Accusative Case—

Decet. Juvat. Piget,
Dedecet. Oportet. Positet.
Delectat. Miseret. Pudet.
Tedet.

as

Oportet me ire, it behaves me to go, or I ought to go. Oportet teire you . " Oportet eum ire him , he,, &c. &c. &c &c.

VI.

The following are used with the Dative Case-

Libet. Licet. Accidit. Contingit. Evenit. Convenit. Expedit.

Licet mihi ire, it is allowed me to go, or I may go. Licet tibi ire you , you , •• Licet ei ire him ,, he&c. &c. åс. åс.

VII.

Intransitive Verbs when used impersonally in the Passive Voice sometimes have the Ablative and Preposition, to express the person, as-

> Luditur a me, there is playing by me, or I play. Luditur a te you ,, you play. Luditur ab eo him ,, he plays. &c. But this Ablative is often left out.

> > VIII.

Interest, refert, are used with the Genitive as also with the Possessive Cases, meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, vestrā. 129 (III. a).

> Regis interest facere recte, Regis refert facere recte,

It imports (it concerns) the king to act rightly.

See also p.

Et tuā et meā interest te valere, It is both to your interest and mine that you should be well.

IX.

The Impersonals-Fulgurat, it lightens.

Tonat, it thunders.

Luscescit, it dawns. Pluit, it rains. Grandinat, it hails. Vesperascit, it gets late Ningit, it snows

are of course not used with any Personal or other Object.

MODE OF ASKING QUESTIONS.

The Interrogative Pronoun "quis" asks a question, as-

Quis home est? Who is the man?
Que sunt ille puelle? Who are those girls?
Quid agis? What are you doing?
Quid est nomen tibi? What is your name?
Cujus est hic liber? Whose is this book?

Such words also, as-

Quando, when? Ubi, When? Quamdiu, how long? Quoties, how often? Ubi. where? Quo, whither? Quorsum, whitherward? Unde, whence? Qua, which way? Quatenus, how far?

Quousque, how far?

are all of them Interrogatives, but they can ask only particular questions, as—

Quo curris? Whither do you run? Quando redibis? When will you return? Quoties dixisti hoc? How often have you said this? &c., &c., &c.

1.

But in asking questions in Latin the word ne is frequently used, in much the same way that we use the note of Interregation in (?) English; no English is to be given to it, as—

Videsne, puer?
Do you see, boy?

II.

If there is a non in the sentence ne will come at the end of non, and will thus make nonne, as—

Nonne est puer diligens?
Is not the boy industrious?

From the very wording of the sentence, it will be seen that the answer "yes" is expected—nonne therefore is said to be a sign of a question when the answer "yes" is expected.

III.

Num is put when the answer "no" is expected, and, like ne, must not be translated, as—

Num est puer diligens?
Is the boy industrious?

Here, however, the answer "no" being expected, the question may be turned so as to show this—and the words rendered not simply—

Is the boy industrious?

to which "yes" or "no" is applicable, but—

The boy is not industrious, is he?

to which it is clearly seen that the answer "no" is expected. IV.

When there is a double question asked, *Utrum*, "whether," (or *num* or *ne*), is used, followed by *an*, "or," as—

Utrum est puer an puella diligentior?

Whether is the boy or the girl more industrious?

Utrum need not, however, be translated, as it is quite enough to say—

Is the boy or girl more industrious?

Neither, indeed, need Utrum be put in in Latin, but it may be left out in the same way as "whether" is left out in English, for it matters not whether we say—

Utrum est puer an puella diligentior?

or

Est puer an puella diligentior?

v.

In indirect questions the Verb is put in the Subj. Mood—

He asks who you are. Rogat quis sis.

He asks whether the boy or girl is more industrious,

Rogat utrum puer an puella sit di.igentior

PRONOUNS.

There are Eight kinds of Pro-

- nouns —

 1. Personal.
- 5. Definitive.
- 2. Reflexive.
- 6. Relative.
- 3. Possessive.
 4. Demonstrative.
- Interrogative.
 Indefinite.
- 1. Personal Pronouns are—
 - 1. Ego, I.
- 3. Nos, We.
- 2. Tu, Thou.
- 4. Vos, Ye.
- 2. Reflexive—

Se (sese), himself, herself, itself, themselves.

- 3. Possessive—
 - 1. Meus, my, mine.
 - 2. Tuus, thy, thine, your.
 - 3. Suus, his own, her own, &c.
 - 4. Cujus, a, um, whose.
 - 5. Noster, our.
 - 6. Vester, your.

- 4. Demonstrative-
 - 1. Is, that (he, she, it).
 - 2. Hic, this (near me).
 - 3. Ille, that (yonder).
 - 4. Iste, that (near you).
- 5. Definitive-

Idem, same. Ipse, self.

6. Relative—

Qui, who or which.

7. Interrogative—

Quis, who or what?

8. Indefinite-

Quis, any one.

N.B. 2 D's, 2 I's, 2 R's, 2 P's,
Will give the Pronouns eight
with ease.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

I.

The Personal Pronouns, ego, tu, nos, vos, and the Demonstrative Pronouns, ille, illi, are sometimes used as the Nominative Case to the Verb where no other Nominative is expressed or evidently understood.

Amo means Ego amo, I love.

Amas , Tu amas, Thou lovest.

Amat ,, Ille amat, He loves.

Amamus, Nos amamus, We love.

Amatis ,, Vos amatis, Ye love.

Amant , Illi amant, They love.

TT.

But this Personal Pronoun is not generally expressed, except for the purpose of emphasis.

I am walking in the garden, Ambulo (not ego ambulo) in horto.

III.

But if I wish to show some distinction between what I am doing and what somebody else is doing, I must use ego.

I am walking in the garden, you are sitting in the house.

Ego ambulo in horto, tu sedes in domo.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

The Reflexive Pronoun se is often misunderstood, and therefore misplaced.

The master said "that he" was writing.

The master praised the boy and said "that he" was good.

In the first sentence the man is speaking of himself, so we must use "se." In the second sentence the man is speaking of the boy, so we must use "eum."

Magister dixit se scribere.

Magister laudavit puerum et dixit
eum esse bonum.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

I.

The Possessive Pronouns, like Adjectives, agree with their Substantives, and THAT ALONE.

He was reading his book.

She was reading her book.

They were reading their book.

Must be all turned into suum

librum.

II.

Notice the difference between ejus, and suus.

The boy was reading his (own) book.

Puer legebat suum librum.

The boy was sitting near his brother and reading his book.

Puer sedebat prope fratrem et legebat ejus (i.e., his brother's) librum. III.

Note that "you" in English is both singular and plural tu and vos; and "your" is both "tuus" "and vester,"—be careful whether you are speaking to, or of one person or more than one.

What are you doing, my boy?
Quid agis, puer?
What are you doing, my boys?
Quid agitis, pueri?
Soldier, hasten your flight.
Miles, matura tuam fugam.
Soldiers, hasten your flight.
Milites, maturate vestram fugam.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

The distinction between hic, ille and iste must be remembered: hic means "this near me," ille "that yonder," pointing at something at some distance, and iste, "that of yours, or that by you."

Boy, do you see this book? Videsne hunc librum, puer?

Boy, give me that book (yonder). Da mihi illum librum, puer.

Boy, give me that book of yours (a near you).

Da mihi istum librum puer

PREPOSITIONS.

Ι

The Preposition must stand-

- 1. Either immediately before the word that it governs.
- 2. Or before the Adjective agreeing with that word.
- 3. Or before a Genitive depending on that word.

Milites ibant trans agros hostium.

Milites ibant trans fertiles agros hostium.

Milites ibant trans hostium fertiles agros.

Tenus, however, follows its case, which is sometimes a Genitive. So also do versus and versum.

11.

A, ab for by is used of an Agent, but not to express the instrument.

The man was killed by me.
Vir occisus est a me (agent).
The man was killed by a stone.
Vir occisus est lapide (instrument).

Ad is used after Verbs of motion, but not before names of Towns, etc.

He was going to the city. Ibat ad urbem.

He was going to Rome.
1bat Romam.

III.

Cum is not used ordinarily for "with," unless it may be turned into "together with," "along with,"—

The king went with (together with) his legions.

Rex ivit cum legionibus.

The king fought with his sword. Rex pugnavit gladio.

In (in) is used before ordinary words, but not before a name of a Town, or a Noun denoting Time when, as—

The king was sitting in the garden. Rex sedebat in horto.

The king was fighting in Italy. Rex pugnabat in Italia.

The king was living in Carthage (i.e. at Carthage).

Rex vivebat Carthagine.

In winter the cold is intense.

Hieme frigus est magnum.

In, when it is followed by the Abl. signifies rest in

Sedeo in domo.

In, when it is followed by the Acc., signifies motion into, or on to or to,

Festino in domum.

For list of Prepositions, see p. 58.

END OF PART II.

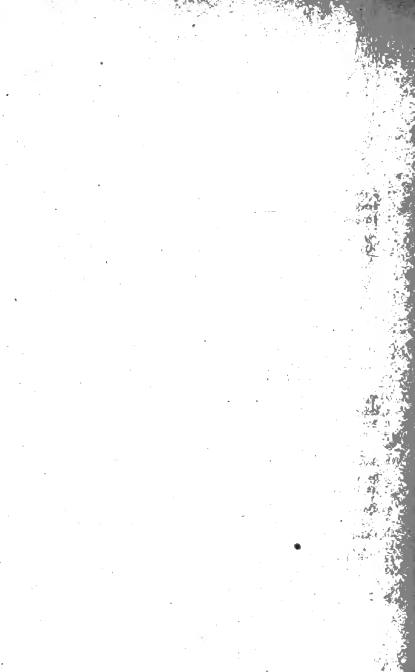
PART III. IRREGULAR VERBS.



PART III. IRREGULAR VERBS.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE	PAGE
	Irregular Verbs, Conj. I 117	14. Verbs with no Perfect 132
	Irregular Verbs, Conj. II 117	15. Verbs with no Supine 133
3.	Irregular Verbs, Conj. III.—	16. Verbs with neither Perfect
	(1) 7) 0 1 1 0 1 1 10 110	nor Supine 134
	(a) Perfect xi, Supine tum 119 (b) , xi, , xum 119	17. Verbs with two Supines 134
	(b) ,, xi, ,, xum 119 (c) ,, si, ,, sum 119	18. Two or more Supines from
	(0)))	the same Verb 135
	(e) ,, psi, ,, ptum 120	19. Supines somewhat similar
	(f) ,, ui, ,, tum 120	from different Verbs 136
	(g) ,, ui, No Supine 121 (h) ,, vi, Supine tum 121	20. Perfects somewhat similar
	(i) , vi, Supine tum 121 (i) , with Reduplica-	that come from different
	tion; Supine tum, sum 122	Verbs 137
•	(k) Perfect di, Supine sum 123	21. Principal Inceptive Verbs . 139
	(1) Compounds of do 123	21. 1 Imelpai inceptive verbs . 100
	(m) Verbs that cannot be arranged under previous	1. With Perfect and Supine.
	headings 123	2. With Perfect only,
	neadings	3. Without Perfect or Supine.
4.	Verbs in io of Conj. III 124	
	Irregular Verbs, Conj. IV 125	22. Frequentative Verbs 140
	Principal Neuter Verbs 125	23. Desiderative Verbs 140
7.	Principal Verbs both Active	24. Impersonal Verbs 141
•	and Neuter 126	25. Impersonals relating to the
8.	Deponent Verbs-	weather 142
٥.	•	26. Specimen of an Impersonal
	1. Regular 127	Verb in full 142
	2. Irregular 128	27. Anomalous Verbs 142
9.	Quasi-Passives and Semi-	28. Irregularities of Edo 143
•	Deponents 129	29. Defective Verbs 143
ιο.	Compounds of Sum 130	30. Fari, to speak 145
11.	_	31. Age, Ave, etc 145
12.	Verbs similar in spelling . 131	32. Irregular Verbs (alphabetically
	with different meanings 132	arranged) 146–151



PART III. IRREGULAR VERBS.

It is to be noted throughout that forms thus marked * occur only in compounds.

IRREGULAR VERBS—CONJUGATION I.

Crepo	crepui	crepitum	creak.
Cubo	cubui	cubitum	lie.
Domo	domui	domitum	tame.
Mico	micui	-	glitter.
Plico	*plicui	*plicitum	fold.
Sono	sonui	sonitum	sound.
Tono	tonui	tonitum	thunder,
Veto	vetui	vetitum	forbid.
Seco	secui	sectum	cut.
Do	dĕdi	dătum	give.
Sto	stěti	statum	stand.
Jŭvo	jūvi	jutum	help.
Lävo	lāvi ·	lotum	wash.

IRREGULAR VERBS—CONJUGATION II.

Deleo	delēvi	$\mathbf{del}ar{\mathbf{e}}\mathbf{tum}$	$blot\ out.$
Fleo	flēvi	fletum	weep.
*Pleo	*plēvi	*pletum	fill.
Neo	nevi	netum	spin.
Ardeo	arsi	arsum	take fire.
Fulgeo	fulsi		glitter.
Hæreo	hæsi	hæsum	stick.
Jubeo	jussi	jussum	command.

Maneo	mansi	mansum	remain. soothe. laugh. advise. press.
Mulceo	mulsi	mulsum	
Rideo	risi	risum	
Suadeo	suasi	suasum	
Urgeo	ursi	—	
Lugeo	luxi		mourn.
Luceo	luxi		shine.
Mordeo	momordi	morsum	bite.
Pendeo	pependi	pensum	hang. (intr.)
Spondeo	spopondi	sponsum	pledge.
Tondeo	totondi	tonsum	shear.
Prandeo	prandi	pransum	lunch.
Sĕdeo	sēdi	sessum	sit.
Vĭdeo	vīdi	visum	see.
Fŏveo	fōvi	fötum	cherish.
Mŏveo	mōvi	mötum	move.
Vŏveo	vōvi	v ötum	vow.
Căveo	cāvi	cautum	beware.
Făveo	fāvi	fautum	favour.
Doceo	docui	doctum { mistum } mixtum } tostum tentum	teach.
Misceo	miscui		mix.
Torreo	torrui		roast
Teneo	tenui		hold.
Augeo	auxi	auctum	increase. (trans.) be indulgent. twist.
Indulgeo	indulsi	indultum	
Torqueo	torsi	tortum	
Audeo Gaudeo Soleo	ausus sum gavisus sum solitus sum	semi- deponent.	dare. rejoice. be wont.

CONJUGATION III.

All the Verbs of the Third Conjugation are of themselves so irregular that they require to be classed in some such way as the following.

I. PERFECT ai, SUPINE tum.

Cingo	cinxi	cinctum	surround.
Coquo	coxi	coctum	cook.
Dico	dixi	dictum	say.
Duco	duxi	ductum	lead.
Fingo	finxi	fictum	fashion.
Jungo	junxi	junctum	join.
Pingo	pinxi	pictum	paint.
Rego	rexi	rectum	rule.
*Stinguo	*stinxi	*stinctum	quench.
Struo	struxi	structum	\overline{pile} .
Tego	texi	tectum	cover.
Tinguo	tinxi	tinctum	dye.
Traho	traxi	tractum	draw.
Unguo	unxi	unctum	anoint.
Veho	vexi	vectum	carry.
Vivo	vixi	victum	live.

II. PERFECT xi, SUPINE xum.

Figo	fixi	fixum	fix.
Flecto	flexi	flexum	bend.
Fluo	fluxi	fluxum	flow.
Necto	nexi (nexui)	nexum	bind.

III. PERFECT si, SUPINE sum.

Cedo	cessi	cessum	yield.
Claudo	clausi	clausum	shut.
Divido	divisi	divisum	divíde.

Lædo	læsi	læsum	hurt.
Ludo	lusi	lusum	play.
Mergo	mersi	mersum	drown.
Mitto	misi	missum	send.
Plaudo	plausi	plausum	applaud.
Premo	pressi	pressum	press.
Rado	rasi	rasum	scrape.
Rodo	rosi	rosum	gnaw.
\mathbf{Spargo}	sparsi	sparsum	sprinkle.
Tergo	tersi	tersum	wipe.
Trudo	trusi	trusum	thrust.
Vado	*vasi	*vasum	go.
Vello	vulsi (velli)	vulsum	pluck.

IV. PERFECT si, SUPINE tum.

Gero	gessi	${f gestum}$	carry on.
Uro	ussi	ustum	burn.

V. PERFECT psi, SUPINE ptum.

Carpo	carpsi	carptum	pluck.
Como	compsi	comptum	adorn.
\mathbf{Demo}	dempsi	demptum	take away.
Nubo	nupsi	nuptum	be married.
Promo	prompsi	promptum	$take\ forth.$
Repo	repsi	reptum	creep.
Scalpo	scalpsi	scalptum	scratch.
Scribo	scripsi	scriptum	write.
Serpo	serpsi	serptum	crawl.
Sumo	sumpsi	sumptum	take.
Temno	tempsi	temptum	despise.

VI. PERFECT ui, SUPINE tum.

Acuo	acui	acūtum	sharpen.
Alo	alui	altum (alĭtum) nourish.
Arguo	argui	argutum	prove.

Colo	colui	cultum	till.
Consulo	consului	consultum	consult.
* Cumbo	*cubui	*cubitum	lie down.
Exuo	exui	exutum	$put\ off.$
Fremo	fremui	fremitum	murmur.
Gemo	gemui	gemitum	groan.
Gigno	genui	$\operatorname{genitum}$	produce.
Imbuo	imbui	imbūtum	tinge.
Induo	indui	indutum	put on.
Luo	lui	luĭtum	wash, atone.
Minuo	minui	${f minar utum}$	lessen.
Occulo	occului	occultum	hide.
Pono	posui	positum	place.
Ruo	rui	† rutum	rush, fall.
Sero	serui	sertum	join.
Statuo	statui	statūtum	set up.
Strepo	strepui	strepitum	roar.
Texo	texui	textum	we ave.
Tribuo	tribui	tributum	assign.
Vomo	vomui	vomitum	vomit.

[†] The Primer gives ruitum as supine, and ruiturum occurs in Ovid, Met. iv. 460; but Andrews gives rutum. Cf. obrutus.

VII. PERFECT ui, NO SUPINE.

Metuo	metui	_	fear.
Nuo	nui		nod.
Tremo	tremui	*	tremble.
Volo	volui	-	wish.

VIII. PERFECT vi, SUPINE tum.

Arcesso	arcessivi	arcessitum	send for.
Cerno	crevi	cretum	sift.
Cresco	crevi	cretum	grow.
Lacesso	lacessivi	lacessitum	provoke.
Lino	levi	lĭtum	smear.
Nosco	novi (I know)	notum become	acquainted with.

Pasco	pavi	pastum	feed.
Peto	petivi	petitum	ask.
Quæro	quæsivi	quæsitum	seel:.
Quiesco	quievi	quietum	rest.
Sero	sevi	sătum	sow.
Sino	sīvi	sĭtum	allow.
Sperno	sprevi	spretum	despise.
Sterno	stravi	stratum	strew.
Suesco	suevi	suetum	be wont.
Tero	\mathbf{trivi}	tritum	rub.

IX. PERFECT WITH REDUPLICATION: SUPINE tum, sum.

Cado	$\mathbf{cec}\mathbf{\check{i}}\mathbf{di}$	casum	fall.
\mathbf{C} ædo	\mathbf{cec} īdi	cæsum	cut, beat, kill
Cano	c ecĭu i	cantum	sing.
Curro	cucurri	cursum	run.
Fallo	fefelli	falsum	deceive.
Parco	peperci	parsum	spare.
Pango	pepigi	pactum	\overline{fasten} .
Pario	peperi	partum	bring forth.
Pello	pepuli	pulsum	drive.
\mathbf{Pendo}	pependi	pensum	weigh.
Pungo	pupugi	punctum	prick.
Tango	tetigi	tactum	touch.
\mathbf{Tendo}	tetendi	tensum &	stretch.
		tentum	
Tollo	sustuli	sublatum	$take\ up.$
Tundo .	tutudi	tunsum	thum p.

PERFECT WITH REDUPLICATION, NO SUPINE.

Disco	didici	 learn.
Posco	poposci '	 demand.

X. PERFECT di, SUPINE sum.

*cendi	*censum	set on fire.
ēdi	esum	eat.
*fendi	*fensum	strike.
fĭdi	fissum	cleave.
fudi	fusum	pour.
pandi	pansum (passum)	spread.
prehendi	prehensum	grasp.
scandi	scansum	climb.
scĭdi	scissum	tear.
	ēdi *fendi fĭdi fudi pandi prehendi scandi	ēdi esum *fendi *fensum fĭdi fissum fudi fusum pandi pansum (passum) prehendi prehensum scandi scansum

XI. COMPOUNDS OF do: PERFECT didi, SUPINE ditum.

Abdo	abdĭdi	abditum	hide.
Addo			(add.
Condo			found, hide.
Credo	=		believe.
Dedo			give up.
Edo	10		give forth.
Perdo	-didi	-ditum	lose.
Prodo			betray.
Reddo			restore.
Subdo	1 1		substitute.
Trado			deliver.
Vendo)		sell.

XII. VERBS THAT CANNOT BE ARRANGED UNDER PREVIOUS HEADINGS.

Ago	egi	actum	do.
Bibo	bibi	bibitum	drink.
Emo	ēmi	emptum	buy, take.
Frango	fregi	fractum	break.
Lego	legi	lectum	choose, read.
Linquo	liqui	*lictum	leave.
Meto	messui	messum	to mow.
Rumpo	rupi	ruptum	break.
Sisto	*stiti	*statum	make to stand.

Solvo 1	solvi	$solar{u}tum$	loosen.
$ m Vello^{2}$	velli & vulsi	vulsum	pull.
Verto	verti	versum	turn.
Vinco	vici	victum	conquer.
Volvo 1	volvi	volūtum	roll.

¹ These might have been included in those making Perfect vi, Supine tum, but they only make vi because there is a v in the present.

² This because it also makes *vulsi* has been included in those making Perfect *si*, Supine *sum* (see p. 4).

VERBS IN io OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

Allicio	allexi	allectum	allure.
Capio	${f c}$ ēp ${f i}$	c aptum	take.
Cupio	cupīvi	cupītum	desire.
Elicio	elicui	elicĭtum	$entice\ forth.$
Facio	feci	factum	make.
Fodio	fōdi	fossum	dig.
Fugio	fūgi	fugĭtum	flee
Jacio	jeci	jactum	throw.
Pario	peperi	partum	bring forth.
Quatio	quassi	quassum	shake.
Rapio	rapui	raptum	seize.
*Specio	*spexi	*spectum	espy.
Sapio	sapi(v)i		$\begin{cases} to \ taste \ of, \ be \\ wise. \end{cases}$

PECULIARITIES OF SOME COMPOUND VERBS.

REGO.

Surgo (sub-rego)	surrexi	surrectum	arise.
Pergo (per-rego)	perrexi	perrectum	go on.

LEGO.

Most of its compounds make -legi, -lectum. But diligo, intelligo, negligo, -lexi, -lectum.

The Compounds of Reduplicated Verbs seldom retain the reduplication, e.g., occido (ob-cædo), occidi, except disco, posco, curro, do, sto.

IRREGULAR VERBS—CONJUGATION IV.

Aperio Operio	aperui operui	apertum opertum	$open. \\ cover.$
Salio	salui	saltum	leap.
Sepelio	sepelivi	sepultum	bury.
Sancio	sanxi	sanctum	_ consecrate.
Vincio	vinxi	vinctum	bind.
Fulcio	fulsi	fultum	prop.
Haurio	hausi	$\mathbf{haustum}$	\overline{drain} .
Sarcio	sarsi	sartum	mend.
Sæpio	sæpsi	sæ p tu m	$hedge\ in.$
Sentio	sensi	sensum	feel.
Comperio	comperi	compertum	find.
Reperio	repperi	repertum	discover.
Vĕnio	vēni	ventum	come.

PRINCIPAL NEUTER VERBS.

Neuter Verbs indicate a state or an action not exercised upon an object: they take an accusative of kindred meaning, e.g. "Duram servit servitutem." There are exceptional uses in the poets, e.g., "Ire vias." Prop. I. i. 18. "Currimus æquor." Virg. Æn. III. 191. Many of them too are followed by the accusative of part affected, e.g. tremit artus, dolet caput, etc.

Algeo	algēre	alsi		be cold.
Ambulo	ambularo	ambulavi	ambulatum	walk.
Ardeo	ardēre	arsi	arsum	take fire.
Caleo	calēre	calui	_	be warm.
Clango	clangĕre		_	resound.

Conniveo	connivēre	{ connīvi } connixi }		shut the eyes.
Curro	currĕre	cucurri	cursum	run.
Cubo	cubare	cubui	cubitum	lie.
Eo	īre	īvi, ii	ĭtum	go.
Ferveo	{ fervēre } fervĕre }	$\left\{ egin{array}{l} ext{ferbui} \\ ext{fervi} \end{array} \right\}$		boil,
Floreo	florēre	florui		flour ish.
Frigeo	${f frig}$ ēre		_	be cold.
Jaceo	jacēre	jacui	jacĭtum	lie.
No	nare	navi		swim.
Pendeo	pendēre	pependi	pensum	hang.
Salio	salire	salui	saltum	leap.
$S\breve{e}deo$	sedēre	sēdi	sessum	sit.
Servio	servīre	servīvi(ii)	servītum	serve.
Sto	stare	stĕti	statum	stand.
Vĕnio	venire	vēni	\mathbf{ventum}	come.
$_{ m Vigeo}$	vigēre			flour ish.
Vireo	virēre			be green.
Vivo	vivĕre	v ixi	victum	live.

Principal Verbs which are both Active and Neuter.

Doleo	dolēre	dolui	dolitum	{ feel pain, grieve for.
Fleo Gem o	flēre gemĕre	flevi gemui	fletum gemitum	weep, weep for. groan, sigh over.
Horreo	horrēre	_	- 10	{ stand on end, shudder at.
Incipio	incipĕre	incepi	inceptum	begin.
nugeo Maneo	lugēre manēre	luxi mansi	— mansum	mourn, lament. remain, await

Ruo	ruĕre	ruī	rutum	{ rush, cast down or up.
Sapio	sapěre	sapivi(ii)		be wise, know.
Sitio	sitire	sitivi(ii)	_	\{\begin{aligned} be thirsty, thirst \ for. \end{aligned}
Tremo	tremĕre	tremui		{ tremble, tremble at.
Verto	vertĕre	verti	versum	turn.
Vigilo	vigilare	vigilavi	vigilatun	$\left\{egin{array}{ll} watch, & watch \\ through. \end{array} ight.$

COMMON DEPONENT VERBS.

A. Regular.

Conj. I.	Arbitror Miror	arbitrari mirari	arbitratus sum miratus sum	think. wonder at.
	Moror	,,	**	delay.
	Spatior	"	**	walk.
	Testor	,,	"	bear witness.
	Vagor	,,	, ,,	wander.
	Venor	**	"	hunt.
Conj. II.	Mereor	mereri	meritus sum	deserve.
, i	Misereor	,,	,,	pity.
	Polliceor	** **	,,	promise.
	Vereor	"	,,	fear.
Conj. III.		uti issed with t	usus sum he irregular verbs.	use.

Conj. IV. Partior partiri partitus sum divide.

PRINCIPAL DEPONENT VERBS.

B. Irregular.

Conjugation II.

Fateor	fatēri	fassus sum	confess.
Medeor	$\mathbf{me} \mathbf{deri}$		heal.
\mathbf{Reor}	r eri	ratus sum	think.
	Conju	igation III.	
${f Amplector}$	amplecti	amplexus sum	embrace.
Apiscor	apisci	aptus sum	obtain.
Comminiscor	comminisci	commentus sum	devise.
Expergiscor	expergisci	experrectus sum	$wake\ up.$
Fatiscor	fatisci	fessus sum	grow weary.
Fruor	frui	fruitus sum	enjoy.
Fungor	fungi	functus sum	discharge.
Gradior	gradi	gressus sum	step.
Irascor	irasci	iratus sum	be angry.
Labor	labi	lapsus sum	glide.
Loquor	loqui	locutus sum	speak.
Morior	mori	mortuus sum	die.
Nanciscor	nancisci	nactus sum	obtain.
Nascor	nasci	natus sum	$be\ born.$
Nitor	niti	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} { m nisus} \\ { m nixus} \end{array} \right\} { m sum}$	strive.
Obliviscor	oblivisci	oblītus sum	forget.
Paciscor	pacisci	pactus sum	bargain.
Patior	pati	passus sum	suffer.
Proficiscor	proficisci	profectus sum	set out.
Queror	queri	questus sum	complain.
Sequor	sequi	secūtus sum	follow.
Ulciscor	ulcisci	ultus sum	avenge.
$\mathbf{U}\mathbf{tor}$	uti	usus sum	use.

Conjugation IV.

Assentior	assentīri	assensus sum	agree to.
Experior	experīri	expertus sum	try.
Metior	metīri	mensus sum	measure.
Opperior	opperīri	 oppertus sum 	$wait\ for.$
Ordior	ordīri	orsus sum	begin.
Orior	orīri	ortus sum	rise.

QUASI PASSIVES AND SEMI-DEPONENT.

I. ACTIVE FORM WITH PASSIVE MEANING.

Exulo Fio 1	exulare fieri	exulavi factus sum	exulatum	$be\ made.$
Liceo	licēre	licui	licitum	\{\begin{array}{ll} be & put & up & to \\ & auction. \end{array}
Vapulo ² Vēneo ³	vapulare venire	vapulavi venii	venītum	be beaten. be on sale.

II. ACTIVE PRESENT WITH PERFECT OF PASSIVE FORM.

Audeo	audēre	ausus sum	dare.
Fido	ficĕre	fisus sum	trust.
Gaudeo	gaudēre	gavisus sum	rejoice.
Soleo	solēre	solitus sum	be wont.

III. ACTIVE PERFECT WITH DEPONENT PERFECT PARTICIPLE.

Ceno	C	enavi	cenatus	sup.
Juro	juravi		juratus	swear.
Prandeo	prandi		pransus	dine.
	Also	Nupta	wedded.	
		Potus	having drunk.	

¹ Fio, pass. of facio. ² Vapulo, pass. of verbero. ³ Veneo, pass. of vendo.

COMPOUNDS OF SUM.

Absum	abesse	{ abfui } { afui }	be absent.
Adsum	adesse	affui	— present.
Desum	deesse	defui	- wanting.
Insum	inesse	infui	-in.
Intersum	interesse	interfui	— among.
Obsum	obesse	obfui	- in the way of.
Præsum	præesse	præfui	- before.
Prosum	prodesse	profui	— useful.
\mathbf{Subsum}	subesse		— under.
Supersum	superesse	superfui	— over, remain.

Compounds of Eo.

Abeo Adeo Anteo Circumeo Coeo Exeo Ineo Intereo Obeo Pereo Præeo Prætereo Prodeo	abīre adire anteire circumire coire exire inire interire obire perire præire præterire prodire	abīvi adīvi anteivi eireumivi coivi exivi inivi interi(v)i obivi peri(v)i præivi præterivi prodi(v)i	abĭtum adĭtum — circuitum coitum exitum initum interitum obitum peritum præitum præitum præteritum proditum	go away. go to. go before. go round. go together. go out. go into perish. encounter. perish. go before go by.
Prodeo Redeo	prodire redire	prodi(v)i redī(v)i	proditum reditum	go forth. return.
Subco	subire	subī(v)i	subitum	{ go under, undergo.
Transeo	transire	transi(v)i	transitum	go over.

The Perfects of all these verbs have also the v left out; as, obivi, obii, etc., etc., which is, indeed, the more usual form. Where the v is bracketed the long form is not given.

VERBS SIMILAR IN SPELLING,*

THOUGH THEY HAVE TOTALLY DISTINCT MEANINGS.

Appello Appello Compello Compello Colligo Colligo	appellare appellĕre compellare compellĕre colligāre colligĕre	appellavi appuli compellavi compuli colligavi collegi	appellatum appulsum compellatum compulsum colligatum collectum	call. land. address. compel. bind. collect.
Dĭco	dicare	dicavi	dicatum	devote.
Dīco	dicere	dixi	dictum	
Ēdo	edere	edĭdi	edĭtum	give forth. eat.
Ĕdo	ĕdĕre (esse)	ēdi	esum	
Edŭeo	educăre	educavi	educatum	educate.
Edūeo	educĕre	eduxi	eductum	lead out.
Lēgō	legāre	legavi	legatum	depute. $gather.$
Lĕgo	legĕre	lēgi	lectum	
Occido	occiděre	occīdi	occāsum	fall. $slay.$
Occido	occiděre	occīdi	occīsum	
Sĕro	serĕre	serui	sertum	join.
Sĕro	serĕre	sēvi	sătum	sow.
Vŏlo	volare	volavi	volatum	fly.
Vŏlo	velle	volui	—	wish.

Est	3rd sing. pres. indic. of sum	I am.
Est	,, ,, ,, edo	I $eat.$
Nĭtēre	inf. pres. of niteo	shine.
Nītěre	2nd sing. imperat. pres. of nitor	strive.
Oblĭtus	part. pass. pf. of oblino	smear.
Oblītus	part. pf. of obliviscor	forget.
Părĕre	inf. pres. act. of pario	bring forth.
Pārēre	,, ,, pareo	obey.
Věnit)	(3rd. sing. pres. ind. of venio)	
Vēnit }	(3rd. sing. perf. ind. of ,,)	come.
Vēnit	3rd. sing. pres. ind. of veneo	be sold.

[·] Notice that the quantities differ in many cases.

Cases in which the same Verb has different Meanings.

These will often be found to be reducible to one idea—thus,

Lĕgo means (1) To gather, select.

"Illa legit calthas."

(2) To read.

"Plurimus orbe legor."

(3) To coast along, skim.

"Inarimen Prochytamque legit."

These come under the one idea of "gathering:" (1) to gather literally; (2) to pick out the letters and words; (3) to skim lightly over or pass along. All these involve a notion of moving lightly along from one thing to another as one does in gathering flowers.

Ruo means (1) To fall.

"Ruit alto e culmine Troja."-Virg. An.ii.

(2) To rush.

"Quoquo scelesti ruitis?"—Hor.

(3) To throw up.

"Et ruit atram

Ad cœlum picea crassus caligine nubem."

These all fall under the idea of "violent motion." "To be in violent motion" (intransitive); "to put in violent motion" (transitive). The motion may be in any direction—up or down.

VERBS WHICH HAVE NO PERFECT.

Antecello surpass. Furo rage.
Ambigo waver. Glubo bark, peel.
Frendo gnash. Labasco resound.

Plecto punish.

VERBS THAT HAVE NO SUPINE.

Algeo	$be\ cold.$	Niteo	shine.
Ango	vex.	Nolo	be unwilling.
Antecello	surpass.	Nuo	nod.
Audeo	dare.		
~		Pateo	lie open.
Compesco	restrain.	Paveo	fear.
Conniveo	wink.	Plecto	punish.
_		Posco	demand.
Dego	live.	Possum	be able.
Disco	learn.	Psallo	play on harp.
Ferveo, fervo	boil.		,
Fido	trust.	Sapio	be wise.
Fio	become.	Scabo	scratch.
Frigeo	be cold.	Sileo	be silent.
Fulgeo	glitter.	Soleo	be wont.
O-1	•	Sterto	snore.
Gaudeo	rejoice.	Strideo, strido	creak.
Incesso	assail.	Timeo	fear.
Incesso	ussuu.	Tremo	tremble.
Lateo	lie hid.	Tumeo	swell.
	shine.	Turgeo	swell.
Luceo	-	Turgeo	000000
Lugeo	mourn.	Vergo	bend.
Malo	prefer.	Vergo	flourish.
Metno	fear.	Vigeo	be green.
Mico -	glitter.	Volo	wish.
	9 000000	1 010	

Also following Inceptives :-

conticesco	horresco	pallesco
crebresco	languesco	tumesco
delitesco	maturesco	vanesco.
extimesco	obmutesco	vesperasco
	With many others.	

VERBS WHICH HAVE NEITHER PERFECT NOR SUPINE.

Ambigowaver.Furorage.Antecellosurpass.Plectopunish.Dignoscodistinguish.Præcelloexcel.

Also following Inceptives :-

hebesco labasco mitesco puerasco

And many others.

VERBS WHICH HAVE TWO SUPINES.

Alo alitum, altum feed. Applico applicitum, applicatum join. Eneco kill. enectum, enecatum Frendo fressum, fresum qnashFrico frictum, fricatum rub.parch. frictum, frixum Frigo Lavo lavatum, lautum, lotum wash. Misceo mistum, mixtum mix. Pando expand. passum, pansum panctum, pactum Pango fix.*plicitum, plicatum Plico fold. drink. Poto potatum, potum sanctum, sancitum Sancio consecrate. Tendo tentum, tensum stretch. Tundo thump. tunsum, tusum

Two or more Supines from the Same Verb.

Alitum Altum	}	Alo	feed.
Applicatum Applicatum	}	Applico	join
Enectum Enecatum	}	Eneco	kill.
Fressum Fresum	}	Frendo	gnash.
Frictum Fricatum	}	Frico	rub.
Frictum Frixum	}	Frigo	parch.
Lavatum Lautum Lotum	}	Lavo	wash.
Mistum Mixtum	}	Misceo	mix.
Passum Pansum	}	Pando	expand.
Panctum Pactum	}	Pango	fix.
*Plicitum Plicatum	}	Plico	fold.
Potatum Potum	}	Poto	drink.
Sanctum Sancitum	}	Sancio	consecrate.
Tentum Tensum	}	Tendo	stretch.
Tunsum Tusum	}	Tundo	thump.

Supines somewhat similar that come from DIFFERENT VERBS.

captum -	capio	take.
carptum	carpo	pluck.
casum	cado	fall.
cæsum	cædo	cut.
censum	censeo	vote.
sensum	sentio	feel.
$sc\bar{\imath}tum$	scisco	decree.
scitum	scio	know.
sĭtu m	sino	allow.
cĭtum	cieo	put in motion.
cessum	cedo	yield.
sessum	scdeo	sit.
cretum	cerno	sift.
cretum	cresco	grow.
fixum	${f figo}$	fix.
fictum	$_{ m fingo}$	fashion.
frictum	frico	rub.
frictum	frigo	parch.
genitum	gigno	beget.
gemitum	gemo	groan.
mansum	maneo	remain.
mansum	mando	chew.
messum	meto	mow.
missum	mitto	send.
mulsum	mulceo	soothe.
mulsum	\mathbf{mulgeo}	milk.
parsum	parco	spare.
partum	pario	bring forth.

sedere	sit.
sentire	feel.
tendo	stretch.
teneo	hold.
texo	weav e.
$_{ m tego}$	cover.
verro	sweep.
verto	turn.
viso	visit.
video	see.
vincio	bind.
vinco	conquer.
vivo	live.
veho	carry.
	sentire tendo teneo texo tego verro verto viso video vincio vinco vivo

Perfects somewhat similar that come from . Different Verbs.

cecĭdi cecīdi	}	cado cædo	$fall. \ cut.$
crevi crevi	}	cerno cresco	$sift. \\ grow.$
scivi scivi	}	scisco scio	seek to know, decree. know.
ēdi ēdĭdi	}	ĕdo ēdo	$\it eat. \ publish.$
fixi finxi	}	figo fingo	$fix. \ fashion.$
frixi frixi	}	frigesco frigo	$grow\ cold.$ $parch.$
fulsi fulsi	}	fulcio fulgeo	$prop. \ glitter.$

luxi	}	luceo	shine.
luxi		lugeo	mourn.
mandi	}	mando	chew.
mansi		maneo	remain,
messui metui	}	meto metuo	$reap. \ fear.$
mulsi	}	mulceo	soothe.
mulsi		mulgeo	milk.
nactus	}	nanciscor	obtain.
natus		nascor	be born.
orsus	}	ordior	begin.
ausus		audeo	dare.
ortus		orior	rise.
pavi pavi	}	pasco paveo	$feat. \ fear.$
peperci peperi	}	parco pario	spare. bring forth.
pependi	}	pendeo	hang.
pependi		pendo	cause to hang, weigh.
pinxi pinsi (pinsui	}	pingo pinso	paint. pound.
quivi quievi	}	queo quiesco	be able. rest.
scivi civi	}	scio cieo	know put in motion.
vici	}	vinco	conquer
vinxi		vincio	bind
vixi		vivo	live

PRINCIPAL INCEPTIVE VERBS.

These, which are also called Inchoative Verbs, express the beginning of action, and are of the 3rd Conjugation.

(a) THOSE WITH PERFECT AND SUPINE.

Abolesco	-ere	abolevi	abolitum	pass away.
Adolesco	-ere	adolevi	adultum	grow up.
Coalesco	-ere	coalui	coalitum	grow together.
Concupisco	-ere	concupivi	concupitum	desire.
Consuesco	-ere	consuevi	consuctum	get accustomed.
Convalesco	-ere	convalui	convalitum	get well.
Exardesco	-ere	exarsi	exarsum	blaze forth.
Inveterasco	-ere	inveteravi	inveteratum	become old.
Obdormisco	-ere	obdormivi	obdormitum	$fall\ asleep.$
Scisco	-ere	scivi	scitum	decree.
Mansuesco	-ere	mansuevi	mansuetum	grow tame.
Revivisco	-ere	revixi	revictum	come to life again.
				org correct

(β) Those with Perfect only:—

Consenesco	ere	consenui	$grow\ old.$
Conticesco	-ere	conticui	become silent.
Delitesco	-ere	delitui	lie hid.
Duresco	-ere	durui	grow hard.
Effloresco	-ere	efflorui	bloom.
Expavesco	-ere	expavi	$grow\ alarmed.$
Horresco	-ere	horrui	shudder.
Incalesco	-ere	incalui	get warm.
Incandesco	-ere	incandui	glow.
Incanesco	-ere	incanui	become white.
Increbresco	-ere	increbrui	become frequent.
Ingemisco	-ere	ingemui	groan over.
Illucesco	-ere	illuxi	grow light.
Languesco	-ere	langui	grow languid.
Maturesco	-ere	maturui	grow ripe.

Obmutesco	-ere	obmutui	become mute.
Obstupesco	-ere	obstupui	become amazed.
Pallesco	-ere	pallui	grow pale.
Patesco	-ere	patui	become open.
Rubesco	-ere	rubui	become red.
Tepesco	-ere	tepui	$become\ warm.$
Viresco	-ere	virui	become green.

(γ) WITHOUT PERFECT OR SUPINE.

${f Hebesco}$	-ere	grow blunt.	Labasco	begin to totter.
Ingravesco	-ere	grow heavy.	Mitesco	grow ripe.
		Puerasco beco	me a bou	

PRINCIPAL FREQUENTATIVE VERBS.

These signify repeated or intenser action, and are of the 1st Conjugation. Such are:—

Canto	sing.	Hæsito	stick fast.
Capto	catch up.	Lectito	gather often.
†Curso	run hither and thither	Merso	dip in.
Cursito	run hither and thither	Minitor	threaten.
Clamito	cry aloud.	Pulso	strike.
Dicto	say often.	†Rogito	ask often.
Dictito	say often.	Salto	dance.
Gesto	bear.	†Ventito	come often.

These are all conjugated regularly, -are, -avi, -atum, except those marked †, which have no perfect or supine.

Minitor, -ari, -atus sum, deponent.

DESIDERATIVE VERBS.

These signify "desire to do a thing," and are of the 4th Conjugation.

Esurio, esurīre, — esurītum	wish to eat.
Parturio, parturire, parturivi & -ii, —	am in labour, wish to produce.

PRINCIPAL IMPERSONAL VERBS.

These are mostly of the 2nd Conjugation, and are conjugated as such only in 3rd Person Singular of Finite Verb and in the Infinitive.

Conjugation 1.—Infinitives Regular in āre.

Constat constitit it is acknowledged.

Delectat it delights.

Juvat juvit it pleases.

Conjugation 2.—Infinitives Regular in ere.

Attinet	attinuit	$it\ relates.$
Dedecet	dedecuit	it misbecomes.
Decet	decuit	$it\ becomes.$
Libet	libuit & libitum est	$it\ pleases.$
Licet	licuit & licitum est	it is lawful.
Liquet	liquit & licuit	it is clear.
Miseret	miseruit & miseritum est	$it\ pities.$
Oportet	oportuit	$it\ behoves.$
Pertinet	pertinuit	it belongs.
Piget	piguit & pigitum est	it irks.
Poenitet	pœnituit	$it\ repents.$
Pudet	puduit & puditum est	$it\ shames.$
Tædet	tæduit & pertæsum est	it disgusts.

Conjugation 3.—Infinitives Regular in ere.

Accidit accidit it happens.
Contingit contigit it befalls

Conjugation 4.—Infinitives Regular in īre.

Convěnit Evěnit		convēnit evēnit	
Interest	interfuit	interesse	it imports.

Interest interfuit interesse it imports.
Rēfert rētulit rēferre it concerns.

IMPERSONALS RELATING TO THE WEATHER, ETC.

Advesperascit	advesperascĕre	-avit	it approaches evening.
Fulgurat	fulgurare		it lightens.
Illucescit	illucescĕre	illuxit	it grows light.
Lucescit	lucescĕre		it dawns.
Ningit	ningĕre	ninxit	it snows.
Pluit	pluĕre	pluit (pluvit)	it rains.
Tonat	tonare	tonuit	it thunders.
Vesperascit	vesperascĕre	vesperavit	it becomes evening.

SPECIMEN OF AN IMPERSONAL VERB IN FULL.

	Indic. Mood.	Conj. Mood.	Inf. Mood.
Pres.	Oportet	oporteat	oportere.
Fut.	Oportebit		
${\it Imperfect}.$	Oportebat	oporteret	
Perfect.	Oportuit	oportuerit	oportuisse.
Fut. Perf.	Oportuerit		
P. Perf.	Oportuerat	oportuisset.	

Anomalous Verbs,

I.e., Verbs which do not form their parts according to Rule.

,		, -	
Eo	ire	ivi (ii), ĭtum	go.
Fero	ferre	tuli, latum	bear.
Fio	fieri	factus sum	am made.
Malo	malle	malui	had rather.
Nolo	nolle	nolui	am unwilling.
Possum	posse	potui	am able.
Queo	quire	quivi	am able.
Volo	velle	volui	wish.

THE IRREGULARITIES IN EDO (to Eat) ARE:-

Indicative Present.

Act. Edis or es edit or est editis or estis.

Puss. 3 sing. Editur or estur.

Imperative Present.

Act. Ede or es, edite or este.

Imperative Future.

Act. Edito or esto, editote or estote.

Conjunctive Present.

Act. Edam or edim.

Conjunctive Imperfect.

Act. Ederem or essem.

Pass. Ederetur or essetur.

Infinitive.
Edere or esse.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

INQUAM, I Say.

Ind. Pres.Inquam
inquimusinquis
inquimut.inquiunt.Fut. Simple.inquiesinquiet.Imperf.inquiebat.
inquiebant.Perf.inquistiinquit.

Imperative Pres. inque, inquite. Imperative Fut. inquito.

A10, I Say.

Ind. Pres. Aio ais ait, aiunt.
Ind. Imp. Aicham, etc., regular, sing. and plural.
Conj. Pres. aias aiat, aiant.

DEFECTIVE VERBS (continued).

The following have no present stem, and therefore no tenses derived from that stem.

Cœpi, I have begun or began. Odi, I hate. Memini, I remember.

Indicative Mood.

Perf.	$\left\{egin{array}{l} ext{Cep-} \ ext{Od-} \ ext{Memin-} \end{array} ight.$	i, isti, it, imus, istis, erunt.
Pluperf.	$\left\{ \begin{matrix} \text{C}_{\text{cep}}\text{-}\\ \text{Od-}\\ \text{Memin-} \end{matrix} \right.$	eram, eras, erat, eramus, eratis, erant,
Fut. Perf.	$\left\{ egin{array}{l} ext{Cep-} \ ext{Od-} \ ext{Memin-} \end{array} ight.$	ero, eris, erit, erimus, eritis, erint.

Conjunctive Mood.

Perf.	$\left\{ egin{array}{l} ext{Cep-} \\ ext{Od-} \\ ext{Memin-} \end{array} ight.$	erim, eris, erit, erimus, eritis, erint.
Pluperf.	$\begin{cases} \text{Cep-} \\ \text{Od-} \\ \text{Memin-} \end{cases}$	issem, isses, isset, issemus, issetis, issent.

Imperative Mood. memento, mementote.

Verb Infinite.

Infinitive. Perf.	Cepisse	odisse	meminisso.
Part. Perf. Pass.	Cœptus	osus.	
Part. Fut. Act.	Cœpturus	osurus.	

N.B. Perf	. Memini	I remember.	Odi	I hate.
P.P.	Memineram	I was remembering, remembered.	Oderam	{ I was hating, hated.
F.P.	Meminero	I shall remember.	Odero	I shall hate.

FARI, to Speak.

The forms in brackets only found in compounds, e.g. affari, effari, prŏfari, præfari.

Ind. Pres. Fatur, (famur), (famini).

Fut. Fabor, (faberi), fabitur, (fabimur).

Imperf. (Fabar).

Perf. Fatus sum, etc.

Pluperf. Fatus eram, etc.

Conj. Imperf. (Farer).

Perf. Fatus sim, etc.

Pluperf. Fatus, essem, etc.

Imperative Present. Fare.

Infinitive. Fari. Ger. Fandi, fando. Supine. Fatu.

Part. Pres. Fantem, fantis, etc. Part. Perf. Fatus, a, um.

Gerundive. Fandus.

AGE, AVE, ETC.

Age, agite, come.

Apage, begone.

Ave (sometimes spelt have), avete, aveto, avere (Infin.) hail! Salve, salvete, salveto, salvebis (fut.), salvere (Infin.), hail! Cedo, cedite or cette, give here.

Quæso, pl. quæsumus, entreat.

Vale, valete, valeto, valebis (fut.), valēre (Infin.), furewell. Infit, he begins. (Only in this form.)

IRREGULAR VERBS,

ALPHABETICALLY ARRANGED.

Note .- Those marked with an asterisk are only used in compounds.

Abolesco, -levi, abolitum, 3. to pass away.
Accendo, -di, -sum, 3. to set on fire.
Acuo, acui, acutum, 3. to sharpen.
Adolesco, -levi, adultum, 3. to grow up.
Agnosco, -novi, -nitum, 3. to recognise.
Ago, egi, actum, 3. to do.
Aio, ais, ait, I say, defect.
Algeo, alsi, 2. to be cold.
Allicio, allexi, allectum, 3. to allure.
Alo, alui, alitum or altum, 3. to nourish.
Ambigo, 3. to waver.

Amicio, amicui, amictum, 4. to clothe.
Ango, anxi, 3. to squeeze.
Antecello, 3. to surpass.
Aperio, aperui, apertum, 4. to open.
Appello, appuli, appulsum, 3. to land.
Applico, applicui applicavi, applicitum applicatum, 1. to apply.
Arcesso, -ivi, -itum, 3. to send for.
Ardeo, arsi, arsum, 2. to take fire.
Arguo, argui, argūtum, 3. to prove.
Audeo, ausus sum, 2. to dare.
Augeo, auxi, auctum, 2. to increase.

Bibo, bibi, bibitum, 3. to drink.

Cado, cecidi, cāsum, 3. to fall.

Cædo, cecīdi, cæsum, 3. to cut, beat, kill.

Caleo, calui, 2. to be narm.

*Cando, *cendi, *censum, 3. 'o set on fire.

Cano, cēcīni, cantum, 3 to sing.

Capesso, -sivi, -sītum, 3. to seize.

Capio, cepi, captum, 3. to take. Carpo, carpsi, carptum, 3. to pluck. Caveo, cavi, cautum, 2. to beware.

Cedo, cessi, cessum, 3. to yield.

Censeo, censui, censum, 2. to vote.
Cerno, crevi, cretum, 3. to sift.
Cieo, civi, citum, 2. to stir up.
Cingo, cinxi, cinctum, 3. to surround.
Clango, 3. to resound.
Claudo, clausi, clausum, 3. to shut.
Coalesco, coalui, coalitum, 3. to grow together.

Cognosco, -novi, -nitum, 3. know. Cogo, coēgi, coactum, 3. to compel. Colligo, collegi, collectum, 3. to collect.

Colo, colui, cultum, 3. to till.
Como, compsi, comptum, 3. to adorn.
Compello, -puli, -pulsum, 3. to compel.
Comperio, -peri, -pertum, 4. ascertain.
Compesco, compescui, 3. to restrain.
Concupisco, -ivi, -itum, 3. to destre.
Conniveo, -nivi and -nixi, 2. to wink.
Consenesco, consenui, 3. to grow old.
Consuesco, consuevi, consuetum, 3. to get accustomed.
Consûlo, sălui, -sultum, 3. to consult.

Conticesco, conticui, 3. to become silent. Convalesco, -valui, -valitum, 3. to get well Coquo, coxi, coctum, 3. to cook.

Crepo, crepui, crepitum, 1. to creak. Cresco, crēvi, crētum, 3. to grow. *Cubo, *cubui, *cubitum, 1. to lie down. Cūdo, cudi, cūsum, 3. to fashion. Cumbo, cubui, cubitum, 3. to lie down. Cupio, cupīvi, cupītum, 3. to desire. Curro, cucurri, cursum, 3. to run.

Defendo, defendi, defensum, 3. to defend. Dēgo, 3. to live. Deleo, dēlēvi, deletum, 2. to blot out. Delitesco, delitui, 3. to lie hid. Demo, dempsi, demptum, 3. to take away. Depso, -sui, -stum, 3. to knead. Dico, dixi, dictum, 3. to say. Dignosco, 3. to distinguish. Diligo, dilexi, dilectum, 3. to lore. Dimico, -avi and -ui, -atum, 1. to fight. Disco, dĭdĭci, 3. to learn. Dīvido, divisi, divisum, 3. to divide. Do, dědi, dătum, 1. to give.

Abdo, abdidi, abditum, 3. to hide.

Addo to add. Condo tofound, hide, Credo to believe. Dedo to give up. Edo to give forth. Perdo -didi, -ditum, 3. to lose. Prodo to betray. Reddo to restore. Subdo to substitute. Trado to deliver. Vendo to sell.

Doceo, docui, doctum, 2. to teach. Doleo, dolui, dolitum, 2. to feel pain. Domo, domui, domitum, 1. to tame, Duco, duxi, ductum, 3. to lead. Duresco, durui, 3, to grow hard.

Edo, ēdi, ēsum, 3. to eat. Effloresco, efflorui, 3. to bloom. Elicio, elicui, elicitum, 3. to entice forth. Emo, emi, emptum, 3. to buy, take. Eneco, -cui & -avi, -ctum & -ātum, 1. kill.

Eo, -īvi, -ĭtum, to go. Abeo, -ivi and -ii, -ĭtum, to go away. Adeo, -ivi and -ii, -itum, to go to. Ante-eo, ante-ivi, to go before. Circu(m)eo, -ivi, -itum, to go round. Coeo, coivi, coitum, to go together. Exeo, exivi, exitum, to go out. Ineo, inivi, initum, to go into. Intereo, -i(v)i, -ĭtum, to perish.

Obeo, obivi, obitum, to encounter. Pereo, peri(v)i, peritum, to perish. Præeo, -ivi, -itum, to go before. Prætereo, -ivi, -itum, to go by. Prodeo, -i(v)i, -itum, to go forth. Redeo, redi(v)i, reditum, to return. c to go under. Subeo, subi(v)i, subitum undergo. Transeo, -i(v)i, -itum, to go over.

Exardesco, -arsi, -arsum, 3. to blaze forth. Excello, excellui, 3. to excel. Expavesco, expavi, 3. to grow alarmed.

Făcesso, -si, -sītum, 3. to accomplish. Facio, fēci, factum, 3. to do, make. Fallo, fĕfelli, falsum, 3. to deceive. Farcio, farsi, fartum, 4. to stuff. Faveo, favi, fautum, 2. to favour. *Fendo, *fendi, *fensum, 3. to strike. Fero, inf. ferre, tŭli, latum, to bear. Ferveo and -vo, -bui and -vi, 2, 3, to boil. Fido, fisus sum, 3. to trust. Figo, fixi, fixum, 3. to fix.

Findo, fidi, fissum, 3, to cleave. Fingo, finxi, fictum, 3. to fashion. Fio, inf. fieri, factus sum, to become, Flecto, flexi, flexum, 3, to bend, Fleo, flevi, fletum, 2. to weep. Floreo, florui, 2. to flourish. Fluo, fluxi, fluxum, 3. to flow.

Fodio, födi, fossum, 3. to dig. Foveo, fovi, fotum, 2. to cherish. Frango, fregi, fractum, 3. to break.

Fremo, -ui, -itum, 3. to murmur.
Frendo, fressum & frēsum, 3. to gnash.
Frico, fricui, frictum & -atum, 1. to rub.
Frigeo, 2. to be cold.
Frigo, -xi, -ctum or -xum, 3. to parch.
Fugio, fugi, fugitum, 3. to flee.
Fulcio, fulsi, fultum, 4. to prop.
Fulgeo, fulsi, 2, to glitter.
Fundo, fūdi, fusum, 3. to pour, rout.
Furo, furui, 3. to rage.

Gaudeo, gavisus sum, 2. to rejoice. Gemo, gemui, gemitum, 3. to groan. Gero, gessi, gestum, 3. to carry on. Gigno, genui, genitum, 3. to produce. Glubo, 3. to bark, peel.

Hæreo, hæsi, hæsum, 2. to stick. Haurio, hausi, haustum, 4. to drain. Horresco, horrui, 3. to shudder.

Ico, ici, ictum, 3. to strike.
Ignosco, ignōvi, ignōtum, 3. to pardon.
Illucesco, illuxi, 3. to grow light.
Imbuo, imbui, imbutum, 3. to tinge.
Incalesco, incalui, 3. to get warm.
Incandesco, incandui, 3. to glow.
Incanesco, incandui, 3. to become white.
Incendo, -cendi, -censum, 3. to set on fire
Incesso, -cessivi, or -cessi, 3. to assail.
Incipio, incepi, inceptum, 3. to begin.
Increbresco, -crebui, 3. become frequent
Indulgeo, -ulsi, -ultum, 2. to be indulgent
Induo, indui, indutum, 3. to put on.
Ingemisco, ingemui, 3. to groan over.

Jacio, jēci, jactum, 3. to throw.
Jubeo, jussi, jussum, 2. to command.
Jungo, junxi, junctum, 3. to join.
Juvo, juvi, jutum, 1. to help.

Labasco, 3. to totter.
Lacesso, -ivi, -itum, 3. to provoke.
Lædo, læsi, læsum, to hurt.
Lambo, lambi, 3. to lick.
Languesco, langui, 3. to grow languid.
Lateo, latui, 2. to lie hid.
Lavo, lavi, lavātum, lautum, lotum, 1. to wash.

Lego, legi, lectum, 3. to choose, read.
Lino, levi and livi, litum, 3. to smear.
Lingo, linxi, linctum, 3. to lick.
Linquo, liqui, * lictum, 3. to leave.
Luceo, luxi, 2. to shine.
Ludo, lusi, lusum, 3. to play.
Lugeo, luxi, 2. to mourn.
Luo, lui, luitum, 3. to wash, atone.

Malo, inf. malle, malui, to prefer.

Mando, mandi, mansum, 3. to chew.
Maneo, mansi, mansum, 2. to remain.
Mansuesco,-suevi,-suetum, 3. grow tame.
Maturesco, maturui, 3. to grow ripe.
Mergo, mersi, mersum, 3. to drown.
Meto, messui, messum, 3. to mow, resp.
Metuo, metui, 2. to fear.
Mico, micui, 1. to glitter.

Minuo, minui, minutum, 3. to lessen.
Misceo, -cui, mistum or mixtum, 2. mix.
Mitesco, 3. to grow ripe.
Mitto, misi, missum, 3. to send.
Mölo, molui, molitum, 3. to grind.
Mordeo, momordi, morsum, 2. to bite.
Moveo, movi, mötum, 2. to move.
Mulceo, mulsi, mulsum, 2. to milk.

Necto, -xui and -xi, -xum, 3. to tie, bin 1. Negligo, -lexi, -lectum, 3. to neglect.
Neo, nevi, nētum, 2. to spin.
Ningo, ninxi, 3. to snow.
No, navi, 1. to swim.
Nolo, inf. nolle, nolui, to be unwilling.

Nosco, novi, notum, 3. to be acquainted with.

Nubo, nupsi, nuptum, 3. to be married.

Obmutesco, obmutui, 3. to become mute. Obdormisco, -ivi, -itnm, 3. to fall asleep. Obstupesco, -stupui, 3. become amazed. Occido, occidi, occisum, 3. to fall. Occido, occidi, occisum, 3. to slay. Occulo, occului, occultum, 3. to hide. Offendo, -di, -sum, 3. to knock against. Operio, operui, opertum, 4. to cover.

Pallesco, pallui, 3. grow pale.
Pando, -di, -sum & passum, 3. to spread.
Pango, pepigi, pactum, 3. to fasten.
Parco, peperci, parsum, 3. to spare.
Pario, peperi, partum, 3. to bring forth.
Pasco, pavi, pastum, 3. to feed.
Patesco, patui, 3. to become open.
Paveo, pavi, 2. to fear.
Pecto, -xi, -xum and -ctitum, 3. to comb.
Pello, pepuli, pulsum, 3. to drive.
Pendeo, pēpendi, pensum, 2. to hang.

Pendo, pěpendi, pensum, 3. to weiyh.
Percello, -cůli, -culsum, 3. to dishearten.
Pergo, perrexi, perrectum, 3. to go on.
Peto, petivi, petitum, 3. to sek, seek.
Pingo, pinxi, pictum, 3. to paint.
Pinso, -si and -sui, -sum, 3. to pound.
Plango, planxi, planctum, 3. to beat.
Plaudo, -si, -sum, 3. to clap hands.
Plecto, 3. to punish.
*Pleo, *plevi, *pletum, 2. to fill.
Plico, plicavi and *plicui, *plicatum and plicitum, 1. to fold.

Pono, posui, positum, 3. to place.
Posco, poposci, 3. to demand.
Possum, inf. posse, potui, to be able.
Poto, -avi, -atum and pōtum, 1. to drink.
Præcello, præcellui, 3. to (æc.l.

Prandeo, prandi, pransum, 2. to dine.
Prehendo, -di, -sum, 3. to grasp.
Premo, pressi, pressum, 3. to press.
Promo, -mpsi, -mptum, 3. to take forth.
Psallo, psalli, 3. to play on harp.
Pungo, pupugi, punctum, 3. to prick.

Quæro, quæsivi, quæsitum, 3. to seek. Quatio, quassi, quassum, 3. to shake. Queo, quivi, quïtum, to be able. Quiesco, quievi, quietum, 3. to rest.

Răpio, rapui, raptum, 3. to seize.
Rado, rasi, rasum, 3. to scrape.
Rego, rexi, rectum, 3. to rule.
Reperio, -pperi, -pertum, 4. to discover.
Rēpo, repsi, reptum, 3. to creep.
Reviviseo, revixi, 3. to come to life again.

Rideo, risi, risum, 2. to laugh.
Rodo, rosi, rosum, 3. to gnaw.
Rubesco, rubui, 3. to become red.
Rudo, -di and -ivi, -itum, 3. to bray.
Rumpo, rupi, ruptum, 3. to break.
Ruo, rui, rutum, 3. to rush, fall.

Sæpio (sepio), -si, -tum, 4. to hedge in.
Salio, salui, saltum, 4. to leap.
Sancio, sanxi, sanctum, 4. to consecrate.
Sapio, sapi(v)i, 3. to taste of, be wise.
Sarcio, sarsi, sartum, 4. to mend.
Scabo, scabi, 3. to scratch.
Scalpo, scalpsi, scalptum, 3. to scratch.
Scando, scandi, scansum, 3. to climb.
Scindo, scidi, scissum, 3. to tear.

Scisco, scivi, scitum, 3. to decree.
Scribo, scripsi, scriptum, 3. to write.
Sculpo, sculpsi, sculptum, 3. to engrave.
Seco, secui, sectum, 1. to cut.
Sedeo, sēdi, sessum, 2. to sit.
Sentio, sensi, sensum, 4, to feel.
Sepelio, sepelivi, sepultum, 3. to bury.

Sero, serui, sertum, 3. to join. Sero, sevi, sătum, 3. to sow.

Serpo, serpsi, serptum, 3. to crawl.
Sido, sidi, 3. to sit down.
Sileo, silui, 2. to be silent.
Singultio, 4. to sob.
Sino, sivi, situm, 3. to allow.
*Sisto, *stiti, *statum, 3. to make to stand.
Sitio, siti(v)i, 4. to be thirsty.

Soleo, solitus sum, 2. to be wont.
Solvo, solvi, solütum, 3. to loosen.
Sono, sonni, sonitum, 1. to sound.
Sorbeo, -bui, 2. to suck up.
Spargo, sparsi, sparsum, 3. to sprinkle.
*Specio, *spexi, *spectum, 3. to espy.
Sperno, sprevi, spretum, 3. to despise.
Spondeo, spopondi, sponsum, 2. to pledge.
Statuo, statui, statūtum, 3. to set up.

Sterno, stravi, stratum, 3. to strew.
Sterto, stertui, 3. to snore.
*Stinguo,*stinxi,*stinctum, 2. to quench.
Sto, stěti, statum, 1. to stand.
Strepo, strepui, strepitum, 3. to roar.
Strideo, stridi, 2. to shriek.
Stringo, strinxi, strictum, 3. to tie.
Struo, struxi, structum, 3. to pile.
Suadeo, suasi, suasum, 2. to advise.
Suesco, suevi, suetum, 3. to be wont.
Sugo, suxi, suctum, 3. to suck.

Sum, inf. esse, perf. fui, to be.

Absum, esse, -fui & afui, be absent.

Adsum, -esse, -affui, to be present.

Desum, -esse, -fui, to be wanting.

Insum, -esse, -fui, to be in.

Intersum, -esse, -fui, to be among.

Obsum, -esse, -fui, to be in the way of.

Præsum, -esse, -fui, to be before.

Prosum, prodesse, profui, to be useful.

Subsum, subesse, to be under.

Supersum,-esse, -fui, to be over, remain.

Sumo, sumpsi, sumptum, 3. to take. Suo, sŭi, sutum, 3. to sew. Surgo, surrexi, surrectum, 3. to arise.

Tango, tetigi, tactum, 3. to touch.
Tego, texi, tectum, 3. to cover.
Temno, tempsi, temptum, 3. to despise.
Tendo, tetendi, -sum & -tum, 3. to stretch.
Teneo, tenui, tentum, 2. to hold.
Tepesco, tepui, 3. to become warm.
Tero, trivi, tritum, 3. to rub.
Tergo, tersi, tersum, 3. to wipe.
Texo, texui, textum, 3. to weave.
Timeo, timui, 2. to fear.
Tinguo, tinxi, tinctum, 3. to dye.

Tollo, sustuli, sublatum, 3. to toke up. Tondeo, totondi, tonsum, 2. to shear. Tono, tonui, tonitum, 1. tothunder. Torqueo, torsi, tortum, 2. to twist. Torreo, torrui, tostum, 2. to roast. Traho, traxi, tractum, 3. to draw. Tremo, tremui, 3. to tremble. Tribuo, tribui, tributum, 3. to assign. Trudo, trusi, trusum, 3. to thrust. Tundo, tutudi, tunsum, 3. to thump. Turgeo, tursi, 2. to swell.

Unguo, unxi, unctum, 3. to anoint.
Urgeo, ursi, 2. to press.
Uro, ussi, ustum, 3. to burn.

Vado, *vasi, *vasum, 3. to go.
Veho, vexi, vectum, 3. to carry.
Vello, vulsi (velli), vulsum, 3. to pluck.
Veneo, venivi and venii, venitum, 4. to be on sale.
Venio, veni, ventum, 4. to come.
Vergo, versi, 3. to bend.

Vergo, versi, 3. to bend.
Verro, verri, versum, 3. to sweep.
Verto, verti, versum, 3. to turn.
Veto, vetui, vetitum, 1. to forbid.

Video, vidi, visum, 2. to see.
Vincio, vinxi, vinctum, 4. to bind.
Vinco, vici, victum, 3. to conquer.
Viso, visi, 3. to visit.
Vivo, vixi, victum, 3. to live.

Volo, inf. velle, volui, to wish.
Volvo, volvi, volütum, 3. to roll.
Vomo, vomui, vomitum, 3. to vomit.
Voveo, vovi, votum, 2. to vow.

IRREGULAR DEPONENTS.

Amplector, ampleciti, amplexus sum, to embrace.

Apiscor, apisci, aptus sum, to obtain.
Assentior, -tiri, assensus sum, to agree to.
Comminiscor, -ci, -mentus sum, to devise.
Expergiscor, -ci, experrectus sum, to wake up.

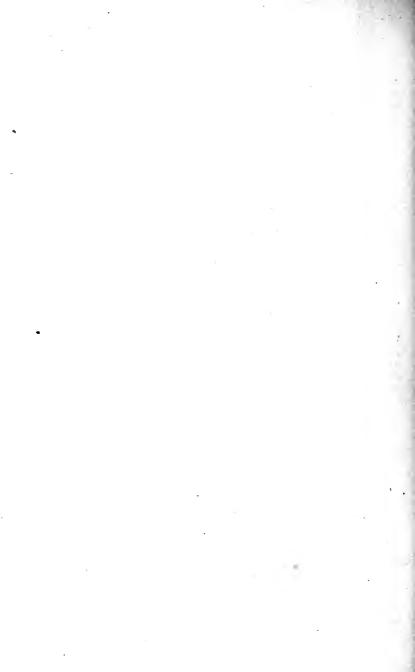
Experior, experiri, expertus sum, to try. Fateor, fateri, fassus sum, to confess. Fatiscor, -ci, fessus sum, to grow weary. Fruor, frui, fruitus sum, to enjoy. Fungor, -gi, functus sum, to discharge.

Gradior, gradi, gressus sum, to step.
Irascor, irasci, iratus sum, to be angry.
Labor, labi, lapsus sum, to glide.
Loquor, loqui, locutus sum, to speak.
Medeor, mederi, to heal.

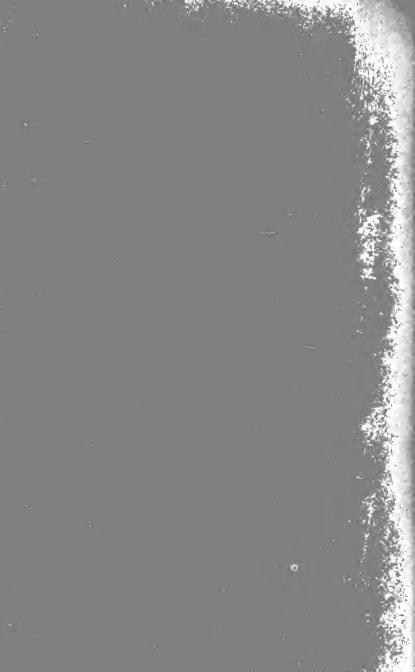
Metior, metiri, mensus sum, to measure. Morior, mori, mortuus sum, to die. Nanciscor, -ci, nactus sum, to obtain. Nascor, nasci, natus sum, to be born. Nitor, niti, nisus & nixus sum, strive.

Obliviscor, -ci, oblitus sum, to forget.
Opperior, -iri, oppertus sum, to wait for.
Ordior, ordiri, orsus sum, to begin.
Orior, oriri, ortus sum, to rise.
Paciscor, -ci, pactus sum, to bargain.
Patior, pati, passus sum, to suffer.
Proficiscor, -ci, profectus sum, to set out.
Queror, -i, questus sum, to complain.
Reor, reri, ratus sum, to think.
Sequor, sequi, secutus sum, to follow.
Ulciscor, ulcisci, ultus sum, to avenge.
Utor, uti, usus sum, to use.

END OF PART III-



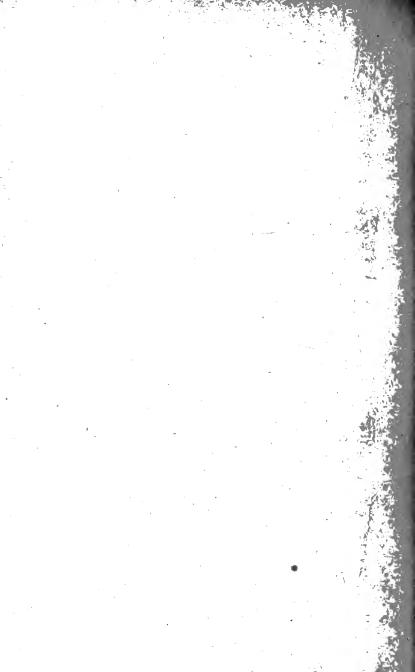
PART IV. DIFFICILIORA.



PART IV. DIFFICILIORA.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE	PAGE
1.	Gender of the Substan-	6. Peculiarities of the Sub-
	tive. General Rules 157	stantive:
2.	Gender of the Third De-	(1) First Declension 171
	clension:	(2) Second Declension . 171
	(1) First General Rule . 159	(3) Third Declension . 172
	(2) Second General Rule 159	(a) Accusative Sing. 173
	(3) Third General Rule . 159	(b) Abl. Sing. in i . 173
	(4) Masc. Substantives . 160	(c) Abl. Sing. i and e 174
	(5) Feminine ,, . 161	(d) Genitive Plural . 175
	(6) Neuter ,, . 163	(4) Fourth Declension . 176
3.	Epitome 164	(5) Fifth Declension 176
4.	Alphabetical List of Sub-	7. Declension of Proper Names 177
	stantives, irregular as to	8. Peculiarities of the Sub-
	their Gender:	stantive (alphabetically
•	(1) Masculine 165	arranged) 178
	(2) Feminine 166	9. Roman Calendar 184
	(3) Neuter 166	10. Roman Money 186
	(4) Common 167	11. Parsing 188
5.	Peculiarities of the Sub-	12. Order of Latin Words 190
	stantive—General 168	13. Rules of Syntax 192-206



PART IV. DIFFICILIORA.

GENDER OF THE SUBSTANTIVE.

In giving in full the Gender of the Substantive, page 18, Part I., is repeated, to make each Part complete in itself.

THERE are three Genders; a Substantive must be either (a) Masculine, (b) Feminine, (c) Neuter. Some also are Common, i.e. Masculine or Feminine.

We give two common General Rules:

I. Certain classes of things are of certain Genders.

Males. People. Months. Winds.

Mountains (most). Rivers (most).

Feminine. Females.

Masculine

Countries (most). Islands.

Cities and Trees (most).

Neuter. Indeclinable Nouns; as, fas, nefas, nihil.

Common. Words applicable to either sex; as,

> Conjux, husband or wife. Hostis, an enemy.

II. Genders of Substantives are in a general way also known by the terminations in each Declension.

First. Feminine, in a and e; Masculine in as and es.

Second. Masculine, in us and er; Neuter in um.

Third. (a) Masculine terminations: o, or, os, er, es, increasing in gen., ex (not x).

(b) Feminine terminations: is, as, aus, x (not ex), s preceded by a consonant, es not increasing in genitive.

(c) Neuter terminations: ar, ur, us, c, a, t, l, e, n.

Masculine in us: Neuter in u. Fourth.

Fifth. Feminine.

But to these rules there are many exceptions (see pp. 158-167).

157

GENDER OF THE SUBSTANTIVE.

EXCEPTIONS.

DECLENSION I.

Nouns in a denoting Males, are Masculine; as, poeta, a poet. So also are

Hadria, Adriatic Sea.

Scurra, a buffoon.

DECLENSION II.

A few in us are Feminine:

Alvus, the belly.

Arctus, the Bear (constellation).

Carbasus, fine flax. Colus, a distaff.

Humus, the ground. Pampinus, vine-leaf.

Pirus, a pear-tree. (a)
Sapphirus, a sapphire. (b)

Vannus, a winnowing fan.

A few in us are Neuter:

Pelagus, the sea. Virus, poison.

Vulgus, the common people (generally).

DECLENSION III.

Exceptions are numerous (see pp. 158-167).

DECLENSION IV.

A few in us are Feminine:

Acus, a needle.
Anus, an old woman.
Domus, a house.
Idūs (pl.). the Ides.

Manus, the hand.
Nurus, a daughter-in-law.
Porticus, a portico.
Socrus, a mother-in-law.

Tribus, a tribe.

DECLENSION V.

All are Feminine except dies, which is common in the Singular, but Masculine in the Plural, and meridies, midday, which is Masculine.

⁽a) And names of plants.

⁽b) And names of jewels.

GENDER OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Words of the Third Declension are of various terminations and of all genders.

Some of course may be known by their meanings; as,

Pater, a father,
Tiberis, the Tiber,

Mulier, a woman,
Soror, a sister,
Venus, the goldess Venus,

But, as a rule, the gender in each declension must be decided by the termination.

FIRST GENERAL RULE.

Substantives are masculine which end in o, or, os, er, es increasing in Genitive, ex (not x).

o, leo, a lion. er, anser, a goose.
or, dolor, pain. es, pes, a foot.
os, flos, a flower. ex, grex, a flock.

SECOND GENERAL RULE.

Substantives are feminine which end in is, as, aus, x (not ex), s preceded by a consonant, es not increasing in Gen.

is, navis, a ship. x, pax, peace.
as, libertas, liberty. bs, urbs, a city.
aus, laus, praise. es, nubes, a cloud.

THIRD GENERAL RULE.

Substantives in ar, ur, us, c, a, t, l, e, n (catlen) are neuter.

ar, calcar, a spur.

ur, fulgur, lightning.

us, corpus, a body.

c, lac, milk.

a, poema, a poem.

t, caput, the head.

l, animal, an animal.

e, mare, the sea.

n, nomen, a name.

But there are many exceptions.

I. MASCULINE.

Substantives in o, or, os, er, es increasing, ex (not x) are masculine.

1. But though Substantives ending in o are masculine, those ending in do, go, io are feminine, and so are—

Caro carnis flesh
Echo echus an echo

The following however, though they end in do, go, io, are masculine:

Cardo cardinis a hinge Ordo ordinis a row Prædo prædonis a pirate

(a grappling Harpăgo -ōnis hookligonis a spade Ligo a weevil. Curculio -ōnis a butterfly Papilio -ōnis -ōnis a dagger Pugio a staff Scipio -ōnis Septentrio -onis the North Stellio -ōnis a lizard -ōnis a pearl Unio Vespertilio -onis a bat

And one in go is common:

Margo marginis a border

2. Those ending in or are masculine; but arbor, arboris, a tree, is feminine, and four are neuter.

Ador ădŏris spelt
Æquor æquŏris the sea
Cor cordis the heart
Marmor -ŏris marble

3. Those ending in os are masc., but two are feminine:

Cos cōtis a whetstone
Dos dōtis a dowry

And two are neuter:

Ŏs ossis a bone Ōs ōris the mouth

4. Those ending in er are masculine; but linter, lintris, a wherry, is feminine, and thirteen are neuter:

Acer aceris the maple Cadaver -eris a corpse Cicer ciceris the chickpea Iter itineris a journey Papaver -eris the poppy Piper -eris pepper Siler sileris an osier Suber suberis the cork tree Tuber tuberis a swelling Uber uberis an udder \mathbf{Ver} vēris the spring Verber -beris a whip Zingiber -eris ginger

N.B.—The penultimate in the Genitive Case of words in previous list is short, so they are not marked; except ver, vēris, spring. 5. Those ending in es increasing in the Genitive Case are masculine, but seven are feminine.

Compes compedis a fetter Merces mercēdis wages Merges mergitis a sheaf of corn Quies quiētis restRequies requietis rest Seges segĕtis standing corn tegĕtis Teges a mat

And one in æs is neuter:

æs æris copper (money)

And three are common:

Ales alitis a bird
Comes comitis a companion
Heres herēdis an heir or heiress

6. Those ending in ex are masc., but six are feminine:

Carex caricis a kind of rush Faex faecis sediment Forfex forficis a pair of shears Lex legis a lam Nex a violent death nĕcis Supellex -lectilis furniture

And ten are common:

Artifex artificis an artificer Imbrex imbricis a hollow tile Index indicis an informer iudicis Judex a judge Obex obicis a bolt Opifex opificis a workman Pūmex pumicis pumice stone Rūmex rumicis sorrel Silex silicis a flint Vindex vindicis an avenger

II. FEMININE.

Substantives are feminine which end in is, as, aus, x, s preceded by a consonant, es not increasing.

1. Those ending in is are fem., but many are masculine.

Amnis ·is a river Annālis -is a year-book Axis -is an axle Canalis ·is a canal Casses -ium (pl.) a snare Caulis a stalk·is Clunis -is a buttock Collis -is a hill Crinis -is hair Cucumis -is (ĕris) a cucumber Ensis -is a sword

Fascis	-is	a bundle
Follis	-is	a pair of bellows
Fustis	-is	a cudgel
Glis	glīris	a dormouse
Ignis	ignis	fire
Lapis	lapĭdis	a stone
Mensis	-is	$a\ month$
Mugĭlis	-is	$a\ mullet$
Natalis	-is	a birthday
Orbis	-is	a circle
Panis	-is	bread
Piscis	-is	a fish
Postis	-is	a door-post
Pulvis	-ĕris	dust
	(see	over)

Sanguis -guĭnis bloodTorris a fire-brand -is Unguis -is finger or toe-nail Vectis -is a lever Vermis -is a worm Vomis (er) -ĕris a ploughshare

For those sometimes fem., see those with an asterisk, pp. 165, 166.

2. Those ending in as are fem., but six are masculine:

-antis a diamond Adamas a Roman coin As กรรเร Elephas -antis an elephant Gigas a giant -antis Mas măris a male Vas vădis a surety

And one is neuter:

Vas vasis a vessel.

- 3. Those ending in aus are feminine, and there are no exceptions.
- 4. Those ending in x are fem., but three in ix are masculine:

Calix calicis a cup
Fornix fornicis an arch
Phœnix phœnicis the phœnix

And two in ux are common:

Conjux conjugis a husband or wife
Dux ducis a guide

Note those in ex on p. 161.

5. Those ending in s preceded by a consonant are feminine, but thirteen are masculine:

Bidens bidentis a hoe Chalybs chalybis steela tooth Dens dentis a fountain Fons fontis Gryps gryphis a griffin Hydrops hydropis dropsy Mons montis a mountain Occidens occidentis the West the East Oriens orientis Pons pontis a bridge Rudens rudentis a cable Tridens tridentis a trident trientis a third part Triens

And seven are common:

Adeps adĭpis fat -entis Adolescens a youth Infans an infant infantis municipis a burgess Municeps Parens parentis a parent Princeps principis a chief -entis a serpent Serpens

6. Those ending in es not increasing are feminine, but two are masculine:

Acinaces -is a scimitar Verres -is a boar-pig

And one is common:

Vates vatis a secr

III. NEUTER.

Substantives in ar, ur, us, c, a, t, l, e, n, are neuter.

1. Substantives ending in ar are neuter,—but one is masculine:

Lar laris household deity

2. Those ending in ur are neuter, but four are masculine:

Fur furis a thief
Furfur furfuris bran
Turtur turturis a turtle dove
Vultur vulturis a vulture

3. Those ending in us are neuter, but two are masculine:

Lepus lepŏris a hare Mus muris a mouse

Nine are feminine:

Incus incūdis an anvil Juventus juventutis uouthPalus palūdis a marsh Pecus pecudis cattleSalus salūtis safety Senectus senectūtis old age Servitus servitutis slavery Tellns tellūris the earth Virtus virtutis virtue

And two are common:

Grus gruris a crane Sus suis a swine

- 4. Those ending in c, a, t, and e are neuter, and there are no exceptions.
- 5. Those ending in *l* are neuter, but five are masculine:

 Consul
 consulis
 a consul

 Mugil
 mugʻilis
 a mullet

 Pugil
 pugʻilis
 a boxer

 Sal
 salts
 salt

 Sol
 solis
 the sun

6. Those ending in n are neuter, but eight are masculine:

Attagen attagēnis a heathcock Delphin delphinis a dolphin Fĭdĭcen -inis a lute-player Lien liēnis the spleen Pecten pectinis a comb Renes renum (pl.) the kidneus Splēn splēnis the spleen Tibicen -ĭnis aflute-player

Three in on are feminine:

Gorgon Gorgonis Gorgon Haleyon haleyŏnis a kingfisher Sindon sindŏnis fine linen

EPITOME.

As a rule the genders must be decided by the terminations, as follows, but there are many exceptions.

Masculine: o, or, os, er, es increasing, ex (not x).

Feminine: is, as, aus, x, s preceded by a consonant, es not increasing.

Neuter: ar, ur, us, c, a, t, l, e, n (catlen).

MASCULINE.

1. Words ending in o: but those in do, go, io are feminine, three in do, two in go, eight in io are however masculine; and one in go is common.

MASCULINE.

- 2. Words ending in or.
 But one is feminine,
 And four are neuter.
- Words ending in os.
 But two are feminine,
 And two are neuter.
- Words ending in er.
 But one is feminine,
 And thirteen are neuter.
- Words ending in es, increasing. But seven are feminine, And one is neuter. And three are common.
- 6. Words in ex (not x).

 But six are feminine,
 And ten are common.
- 1. Words ending in ar.
 But one is masculine.
- 2. Words ending in *ur*. But *four* are masculine.
- Words ending in us.
 But two are masculine,
 And nine are feminine,
 And two are common.

FEMININE.

- 1. Words ending in is.
 But many are masculine
 - Words ending in as.
 But six are masculine,
 And one is neuter.
 - 3. Words ending in aus.
 - Words ending in x.
 But three in ix are masculine,
 And two in ux are common.
 Note words in ex (opposite column).
 - 5. Words in s after a consonant. But thirteen are masculine, And seven are common.
 - Words in es not increasing. But two are masculine. And one is common.

NEUTER.

- 4. Words in c, a, t, e.

 There are no exceptions.
- Words ending in l.
 But five are masculine.
- Words ending in n.
 But eight are masculine,
 And three (in on) are feminine.

SUBSTANTIVES IRREGULAR IN GENDER.

(Alphabetically arranged.)

MASCULINE.

Acinăces	acinacis	scimitar	Gryps	gryphis	$a\ griffin$
Adamas Amnis	adamantis amnis	adamant a river	Harpago	harpagōnis	a grappling hook
Annālis	annalis	a year-book	Hydrops	hydrōpis	dropsy
As	assis	a Roman coin	Ignis	ignis	fire
Attagen	attagēnis	a heathcock	Lapis	lapidis	a stone
Axis	axis	an axle	Lepus	lepŏris	a hare
Bidens	bidentis	a hoe	Lien	liēnis	spleen
Calix	calicis	a 4410	\mathbf{Ligo}	ligonis	$a \ spade$
*Callis	callis	a cup a path			
Canalis	canalis	a canal	Mas	măris	a $male$
Cardo	canalis	a hinge	Mensis	mensis	a montk
Casses	cassium	a net	Mons	montis	a mountain
Caulis	caulis	a stalk	Mugil (-is)	O	a $mullet$
Chalybs	chalybis	steel	Mus	muris	a mouse
*Cinis	cineris	ashes	Natālis	natalis	a birthday
Clunis	-is	a buttock	Occidens	occidentis	
Collis	collis	a hill	Orbis Ordo	orbis ordinis	a circle
Consul	consulis	a consul	Ordo Oriens		a row
Crinis	crinis	hair	Oriens	orientis	$the\ East$
Cucumis	-cumeris	a cucumber	Panis		77
Curculio	-culionis	a weevil	Papilio Papilio	panis papilionis	bread a butterfly
			Pecten	pectinis	a comb
Delphin	delphinis	a dolphin	Phœnix	phœnicis	the phænix
Dens	dentis	a tooth	Piscis	piscis	a fish
Elephas	-phantis	an elephant	Pons	pontis	a bridge
Ensis	ensis	a sword	Postis	postis	a door-post
Fascis	fascis	a bundle	Prædo	prædonis	a pirate
*Finis	finis	an end	Pugil	pugilis	a boxer
Follis	follis	a pair of	Pugio	pugionis	a dagger
		bellows	Pulvis	pulvěris	dust
Fons	fontis	a fountain			
Fornix	fornicis	an arch	Rēnes	rēnum	the kidneys
*Funis	funis furis	a rope a thief	Rudens	rudentis	a cable
Furfur	furfăris	bran	Sal	salis	salt
Fustis	fustis	a cudgel	Sanguis	sanguinis	blood
r usus	Lusus		Scipio	scipionis	a staff
Gigas	gigantis	a giant	*Sentis	sentis	a bramble
Glis	gliris	a dormouse	Septentrio	-trionis	the North

Sol	solis	the sun	Unio	unionis	a pearl
Splen	splēnis	spleen	Vas	vadis	a surety
Stellio	stellionis	a lizard	Vectis	vectis	a lever
*Torquis	torquis	a necklace	Vermis	vermis	a worm
Torris	torris	a fire-brand	Verres	verris	a boar-pig
Tridens	tridentis	$a\ trident$	Vespertilio	-lionis	$a\ bat$
Triens	trientis	a third part	Vomis (er)	voměris	a ploughshare
Turtur	turturis	a turtle dove	Vultur	vultŭris	a vulture
Unguis	unguis	$the\ nail$	l		

A few words in is in this list marked * are sometimes feminine (see p. 162).

FEMININE.

Arbor Carex Caro Compes Cos Dos Echo Faex	arbŏris a tree caricis a kind of rush carnis flesh compēdis a fetter cotis a whetstone dotis a dowry echūs an echo faecis sediment	Linter Merces Merges Nex Palus Pecus Quies Requies	lintris mercedis mergitis necis palūdis pecŭdis quiētis requiētis	a wherry wages a sheaf of corn a violent death a marsh cattle rest rest
Forfex Gorgon Haleyon Ilex Incus Inquies Juventus Lex	forficis { a pair of shears } Gorgonis Gorgon haleyonis a kingfisher ilicis the holm-oak incūdis an anvil inquietis rcstlessness juventutis youth legis a law	Salus Seges Senectus Servitus Sindon Supellex Teges Tellus Virtus	salutis segetis -tutis -tutis sindonis -lectilis tegetis telluris virtutis	safety standing corn old age slavery fine linen furniture a mat the earth virtue

NEUTER.

Acer	aceris	the maple	Papaver	papaveris	$the\ poppy$
Ador	adŏris	spelt	Piper	pipĕris	pepper
Æquor	æquöris	the se a	Siler	silĕris	$an \ osier$
Æs	æris	copper	Suber	suběris	a cork tree
Cadāver	cadaveris	a corpse	Tuber	tubĕris	a swelling
Cicer	ciceris	the chickpea	Uber	ubĕris	an udder
Cor	cordis	the heart	Vas	vasis	$a\ vessel$
Iter	itineris	a journey	Ver	vēris	spring
Marmor	marmoris	marble	Verber	verbĕris	$a\ whip$
Os	oris	the mouth	Zingiber	zingibĕris	ginger
0~	oggia	a home			

COMMON.

Adeps adĭpis fat Adolescens -entis a yout Advěna -věnæ a stran Ales alitis a bird Anguis anguis a snauk Artifex artificis an art Auctor auctoris an aut	nger Interpres Judex e Margo ificer Municeps	indĭcis an informer infantis an infant -prĕtis an interpreter judĭcis a judge marginis a border municĭpis a burgess obĭcis a bot
Bos bovis an ox	Obses	obsidis a hostage
a .	Opifex	opificis a workman
Canis canis a dog Civis civis a citiz Cliens clientis a clien Comes comitis a comp	t Pollis	parentis a parent pollinis fine flour principis a chief
	oand or Pumex	pumicis { pumice stone
Conviva convivæ a gues	Rumex	rumicis sorrel
Custos custodis a guar	dian Sacerdos	$\begin{array}{c} { m sacerdotis} \left\{ egin{array}{ll} a & priest & or \\ priestess \end{array} ight. \end{array}$
Dama damæ a deer	Serpens	serpentis a serpent
Dux ducis a guid	Silex	silicis a flint
Exul exulis an exi Grus gruis a cran	Sus	suis a swine
Can he	-	talpæ a mole
Heres heredis heir		testis a witness
Hostis hostis an ene	my Tigris	tigrĭdis a tiger
Imbrex imbricis a hollo	w tile Vates	vatis a seer
Incola incolæ an inho	abitant Vindex	vindĭcis an avenger

The following five are rarely found masculine:

Dama	damæ	a deer	Sus	suis	a swine
Grus	gruis	a crane	Talpa	talpæ	a mole
		Tioria	tioridia	a tiger	

The following six, though common, are rarely found feminine:

Augur	auguris	an augur	Hostis	hostis	an enemy
Aurīga	aurigæ	$a\ charioteer$	Miles	militis	a $soldier$
Hospes	hospitis	a guest '	Præses	præsĭdis	a guardian

PECULIARITIES OF THE SUBSTANTIVE.

There are many irregularities in the Substantive which require notice.

1. Some Substantives are not declined; as,

fas. nefas. nihil. instar.

2. Some Substantives are used in the Singular number only.

Argentum, silver. Aurum, gold. Ferrum, iron.

Plebs, the common people.

Justitia, justice. Ver, the spring. Ævum, age. Letum, death.

Sanguis, blood. Pueritia, boyhood.

*Aer, air. Æther, the sky.

With many more.

* A Plural occurs in Lucretius.

3. Some are used in the Plural number only.

Manes, ghosts. Liberi, children.

Penates, household gods.

Divitiæ, riches. Cunæ, a cradle.

Nugæ, trifles.

Grates, thanks.
Arma, arms.

Munia, functions (office).

Magalia, huts.

With many more.

4. Some Substantives want one or more cases.

The following have no Nom.; viz.:

(daps) dăpis (f.) a feast.

(ditio) ditionis (f.) a dominion.

(frux) frugis (f.) fruit.

(ops) ŏpis (f.) strength.
and others.

5. Some take two forms, though of the same declension, as

Jocus, a jest; plur., joci and joca.

Locus, a place; plur., loci, loca.

Frenum, a bit; plur., freni, frena.

Rastrum, a harrow; plur., rastri, rastra.

- Some Substantives have a twofold declension, and so are called Heteroclita; e.g. domus, a house.
- 7. In the second declension some Substantives end in us and um; as—

Callus, callum, hardened skin.
Commentarius, commentarium, a note book.

8. Some fluctuate between the first and second declension; as—

Menda, mendum, a fault. Vespera, vesper, the evening.

9. Some fluctuate between the first and fifth; as-

Barbaria, barbaries, barbarism. Luxuria, luxuries, luxury. Materia, materies, matter. Mollitia, mollities, softness.

10. Some fluctuate between the second and third; as—

Delphīnus, -i, and delphin, delphinis, a dolphin. Elephantus, -i, and elephas, elephantis, an elephant. Tergum, -i, and tergus, tergĕris, a back.

11. Some fluctuate between the second and fourth; as-

Cupressus, -ūs. and -i. a cupress. Domus domūs. and domi, a house. Ficus. and fici. ficūs. a fig tree. Laurus. laurūs, and lauri, a bay tree. Pinus, pinūs. and pini, a pine tree. Eventus (4), eventum (2), an occurrence. Suggestus (4), suggestum (2), a platform for speakers.

12. Some fluctuate between the third and fifth; as—

Plebs, plebis; as also plebes, plebis; as also plebes, plebei, and plebi, common people.

13. Some vary their declension in the two numbers:

Jugërum, an acre; Sing., second declension; Plural, third. Vas, vasis, a vessel; Sing., third declension; Plural, second.

14. Some Substantives have a different meaning in the Singular and the Plural.

Ædes, a house. Ædes, a temple. Ρ. Aqua, water. Aquæ, medicinal springs. Auxilia, auxiliary forces. Auxilium, help. Carcer, a prison. Carceres, a starting place. Castrum, a fort. Castra, a camp. Copia, plenty. Copiæ, forces. Gratiæ, thanks. Gratia, favour. Impedimentum, a hindrance. Impedimenta, baggage.

Littera, a letter (alphabet).

Ludus, play, school.

Opera, exertion.

Opis (Gen.), help.

Rostrum, a beak.

Litteræ, an epistle.

Ludi, public games.

Operæ, workmen.

Öpes, power, wealth.

Rostra, a platform for speakers.

Tabula, a board.

With others.

Tabulæ, writing tablets.

- 15. Many have only certain cases; but these will be given elsewhere.
- 16. The following have a full plural, but only the ablative in the singular:

Ambage (f.), a circuit. Casse (m.), a snare. Fauce (f.), the throat. Verbere (n.), a stripe.

With others.

Verbere has also, according to Ovid, a Gen.: verberis.

FIRST DECLENSION.

1.

The Dative and Ablative of some words end in abus.

Dea, a goddess, deabus. Filia, a daughter, filiabus. Nata, a daughter, natabus. And others.

The two following words have Gen. Plur. in um.

Cœlicola, a dwelling in heaven, cœlicolûm. Terrigena, earth-born, terrigenûm.

Twowords have old Genitive in as remaining,

3.

Paterfamilias, master of a family. Materfamilias, mother of a family.

Æneas, Æneas, Æneas.

Voc., Enea. Acc., Æneam or Ænean.

Greek Substantives in e and es are given on p. 177.

SECOND DECLENSION.

1.

Dens, a god, is irregular; p. 177.

Filius, a son, makes-

Voc., fili (mî filî, my son). Gen., filii or filî.

And proper names in ius are like filius; as, Lælius, Lælî; so is also qenius.

3.

Jocus, a jest. Locus, a place. Frenum, a bit. Rastrum, a rake. Pelagus, the sea. Virus, poison.

Vulgus, the common people.

Carbasus, fine flax, Nom.P.carbasa, Tartarus, Tartarus,

Adulter, an adulterer. Armiger, anarmour bearer. Gener, a son-in-law. Liber, Bacchus. Liberi, children. Puer, a boy. Signifer, a sign-bearer. Socer, a father-in-law.

Vesper, evening.

Faber, a smith, Gen. Plur., fabrorum and fabrum. Nummus, money, Gen. P., nummûm

and nummorum.

For Greek Substantives, Delos, Orpheus, see p.177.

(With Adjectives.)

1. The terminations of the Substantives of this declension are many and various. Some grammars give at full length as many as thirty samples; but this adds considerably to what a boy thinks he has to learn. Three, or at most four, as samples, are quite sufficient.

Nubes, because it does not increase.
Lapis, because it does increase.
Opus, because it is neuter.
Mare, because it makes ia in the Plural.

- 2. But it must be well noted that the Genitive Singular must be known, and then nearly every Substantive, whatever its termination, can be gone through regularly.
- 3. Some Substantives have more syllables in the Genitive than they have in the Nominative, hence they are called increasing, the proper word being imparisyllabic (not equal in syllables), as those which do not increase are called parisyllabic (equal in syllables).
- 4. There is generally with learners a difficulty as to the Genitive Plural, whether it ends in um or ium. But the general rule is,

The Genitive Plural of increasing nouns is um and not ium.

In other words, if the word increases in the Genitive Singular it does not further increase in the Genitive Plural; but there are exceptions, which will be given presently.

There are peculiarities also in the Acc. and Abl. Singular.

ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR.

The Accusative Singular is im not em

1. In the five words-

Amussis a rule
(Ravis) ravim hoarseness
Sitis thirst
Tussis a cough
Vis violence

2. And in the names of towns and rivers in is; as—

Hispălis Seville
Tiberis the Tiber

The Accusative Singular is im or em in the nine words—

> Clavis a keu Febris fever Messis a harvest Navis a ship a basinPelvis the stern of a ship Puppis Restis a rope Securis an axe a tower Turris and others.

ABLATIVE SINGULAR IN 1.

The Ablative singular has ī not ĕ—

- In all words where the Acc. is im only: as siti, Tiberi.
- 2. In Neuter nouns that end in e, al, ar, as—

N. Mare Abl. Mari Animal Animali Calcar Calcāri

Substantives in ar—the Gen. of which is not āris (ā long)—have e in the Ablative; as—

Baccar baccăris a sweet herb Far farris spelt Jubar jubăris a sunbeam Nectar nectăris nectar

4. Adjectives ending in is, e; er, is, e: as—

Tristis sad tristi Acer sharp acri

ABLATIVE SINGULAR IN I AND E.

The Ablative Singular has both i and e.

In most words where the Accusative is im and em; as, puppi and puppe.

Restis, a rope, has only reste. Securis, an axe, has only securi.

 In Adjectives which have in Nominative one termination; and in Comparatives; as—

Supellex household utensils

Prudens prudent ti and te Altior higher ri and re

But the following Adjectives have e only.

Cœlebs cœlibis unmarried Compos master of compŏtis Deses desidis lazy Impos impŏtis not master of Pauper pauperis poorPrinceps principis chief adultPubes puberis Superstes surviving superstitis

Memor, mindful, has only i. The Participles in ns generally have when used as Epithets, but otherwise e.

NEUTER PLURAL IN IA.

The Nom., Voc., Acc. Plural of Neuter Nouns have ia.

In Substantives the Nom. Sing. of which ends in e, al, ar (Gen. āris);
 as—

Mare the sea maria
Animal an animal
Calcar a spur calcaria

 In Adjectives which have the Abl. Sing. in i alone, or in i and e, except Comparatives; as—

gravis, gravia; prudens, prudentia.

But
melior, meliora; altiora, altiora, etc.

GENITIVE PLURAL.

The general rule, as before stated, is that words that do not increase in Gen. Sing. do increase in Gen. Plural, and have ium; if they do increase in Gen. Sing., they do not further increase in Gen. Plural, and have only um; as,

But,	Hostis Nubes	hostis nubis	an enemy a cloud	hostium.
Dut,	Lapis Judex	lapidis judicis	$a\ stone \ a\ judge$	lapidum. judicum.

But there are exceptions.

 The following six and others, though they do not increase in the Gen. Sing., have um in Gen. Plural.

2. The following three have um or ium.

Apis	apis	a bee.
Mensis	mensis	a month.
Sedes	sedis	a seat.

 Monosyllables, the stem of which ends in two consonants, though they increase in the Gen. Sing., have ium in the Gen. Plural, except Lynx.

Arx	arcis	$a\ citadel.$
As (stem ass)	assis	a Roman coin
Mons	montis	a mountain.
Os (stem oss)	ossis	a bone.

 Several monosyllables, the stems of which end in a single consonant, though they increase in the Gen. Sing., have ium in the Gen. Plur.; as

Faux	faucis	the throat.	Mus	muris	a mouse.
Glis	gliris	a dormouse.	Nix	nivis	snow.
Lis	litis	a law-suit.	Strix	strigis	an owl.
Mas	maris	a male.	Vis	vis	strength.

5. The Gen. Plural generally ends in ium, sometimes with Poets in um, in words the Nom. Sing. of which is ens:

Cliens	clientis	a client.
Adolescens	-entis	a youth.
Prudens (Adj.)	-entis	prudent.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

- 1. The Dative Singular ui is often contracted into u: as, gradui, gradu.
- 2. The following eleven words have the Dative and Ablative Plural in ubus; some have both forms, ubus and ibus.

Acus	· acus	a $needle$	Portus	portus	a harbour
Arcus	arcus	$a\ bow$	Quercus	quercus	an oak
$\mathbf{Artar{u}s}$	artuum	joints	Specus	specus	a cave
Lacus	lacus	$a\ lake$	Tribus	tribus	a tribe
Partus	partus	$a\ birth$	Pecu		cattle
$egin{array}{lll} { m Veru} & { m ver} ar{ m u} & a \ spit \end{array}$					

 Domus, a house, belongs partly to the second declension and partly to the fourth—declined see next page.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

- All words are Feminine except meridies (m.) and dies, which is common in the Singular, but must be masculine in the Plural.
- In the Gen. and Dat. Singular the ei is sometimes contracted into ē; as, diei diē, fidei fidē.
- 3. Res and dies are the only words of this declension which have a complete plural.
- 4. Acies aciēi a line of battle Series a series
 Effigies -ēi an image Species -ei an appearance
 Facies -ēi a face Spes spēi hope

have Nom., Voc., Acc. Plural. No other words of the declension have any Plural at all, except res, dies, mentioned above, and Virgil gives a Plural to glacies (Georg. IV. 517).

 In Gen. and Dat. Singular the e in ei is long after a vowel, as diēi, faciēi, but doubtful after a consonant, as fides, fidēi.

DECLENSION OF PROPER NAMES AND IRREGULAR SUBSTANTIVES.

FIRST DECLENSION.		THIRD DECLENSION.	
S. N. Epitome	S. Cyběle	S. N. Achilles -eus	S. Pallas
S. N. Epitome V. Epitome A. Epitomes G. Epitomes D. Epitomes	Cybele	V. Achille-eu	Pallas
A. Epitomen	Cybelen		
G. Epitomes	Cybeles, Cybelæ	A. Achillem,	Palladem, -ă
D. Epitomes	Cybeles, Cybelæ		
A. Epitome	Cybele, Cybela	G. Achillis, -ĕī, -i, -ĕōs	Palladis, •os
A. Epitome	Cybere, Cybera	D. Achilli	Palladī
0.37 1 1	S. Æneas	A. Achillě	Palladě
S. N. Anchises	Ænea	A. Achine	Lanaue
V. Anchise (-a)			
A. Anchisen(-am)		S. N. Paris	S. Perícles
G. Anchisæ	Æneæ	V. Pari	Pericles, -ĕs, -ĕ
D. Anchisæ	Æneæ		
A. Anchise (-a)	Ænea	A. Paridem, -a, Parin -im	Periclem, -ĕă
			Dominica Dominic
S. N. Thesides	P. Thesidæ	G. Paridis, dos	Periclis, Pericli Pericli
V. Thesidē (-ă, -ā)	Thesidæ	D. Paridī	
-A. Thesiden (-am)	Thesidas	A. Paridě	Pericle
G. Thesidæ	Thesidum		
D. Thesidæ	Thesidis		
A. Thesidē (-ā)	Thesidis	S. N. Sperates	S. Thales
		V. Socrates, Socrate	Thales, -e
SECOND DECLENSION.		A. Socratem, -ēn	Thalem, -ēn, ētă
S. N. Deus (God)	P. Dei, Dii, Di	G. Socratis, -1	Thalis, Thalētis
V. Deus	Dei, Dii, Di	D. Socrati	Thalī, Thalētĭ
A. Deum	Deos	A. Socratē, -ĕ	Thalē, Thalētě
G. Dei	Deorum, Deum		
D. Deo	Deis, Diis, Dis		
A. Deo	Deis, Diis, Dis	S. N. Chlamys	P. Chlamydes,
A. D60	Dels, Dis, Dis	V. Chlamy	
G N Dames	P. Domūs	Adem, -a s	Chlamydes, -as
S. N. Domus V. Domus A. Domum G. Domin	Domus Domus	Gdis	Chlamydum
V. Domus		D. Chlamydi ◀	Chlamydibus
A. Domum	Domus, domos	A. Chlamyde	Chlamydibus
G. Domus	Domuum, -orum		3
D. Domui or domo	Domibus		
A. Domo	Domibus	S. N. Sappho	N. Orpheus
		V. Sapphö	V. Orpheu
SINGULAR.		A. Sappho, -nem	A. Orpheum, -ea
N. Delos	G. Deli	G. Sapphūs, -onis	G. Orpheï, -eos
V. Dele	D. Delo	D. Sappho, -oni	D. Orpheo,-eï,-ei
A. Delon (-um)	A. Delo	A. Sappho, -one	A. Orpheo
A. Delon (-mil)	A. Delu	a. pappio, -0116	A. Orpheo

PECULIARITIES OF SUBSTANTIVES AND ADJECTIVES.

Acer (adj.), acris, e, sharp. Abl. Sing., acri; Nom., Voc., and Acc. Plur. Neut., acria; Gen. Plur. acrium.

Acies, aciei (f.), a line of battle. Only Nom., Voc., Acc., in the Plur.

Acus, -ūs (f.), a needle. Dat. and Abl. Plur., acubus.

Adolescens, -entis (c.), a youth. Gen. Plur., adolescentium.

Adulter, -eri (m.), an adulterer. Keeps the e in all cases.

Ædes (f.), in the Sing. is a temple; in the Plur., ædes, -ium, a house.

Æneas, -æ (m.), Æneas. Voc. Sing., Ænea; Acc. Sing., Æneam or Ænean.

Ambages, -is (f.), a winding. In Sing. only Abl. Gen. Plur., ambagum. Amussis, -is (f.), a rule. Acc. Sing., amussim; Abl. Sing. amussi.

Anchises, -æ (m.), Anchises. Acc., Anchisēn, or -am; Abl., Anchise or Anchisā; Voc. Anchisē or -ã, declined, see p. 177.

Animal, -is (n.), an animal. Nom., Voc., Acc. Plur., animalia; Gen. Plur., animalium; Abl. Sing., animali.

Apis, apis (f.), a bee. Also, apes, apis. Gen. Plur., apium and apum.

Aqua, aquæ (f.), water. (Plur.) aquæ, medicinal springs.

Arcus, -ūs (m.), a bow. Dat. and Abl. Plur., arcubus, like acus.

Arma, -orum (n.), arms. Has no singular.

Artus, -uum (Pl.), (m.), limbs. Dat. and Abl. Plur., artubus, like acus.

Arx, arcis (f.), a citadel. Gen. Plur., arcium.

As, assis (m.), a small coin. Gen. Plur., assium, like arx.

Aurum, auri (n.), gold. Has no Plur.

Auxilium, -i (n.), help. (Plur.) auxilia, auxiliary forces.

Avis, -is (f.), a bird. Abl. Sing., avi and ave.

Barbaria, -æ (f.), barbarism. Also barbaries, barbariei.

Cælicola, -æ, a dweller in heaven. Gen. Plur., cælicolûm.

Cælum, cæli (n.), (no plural), heaven.

Calcar, -āris (n.), a spur. Nom., Voc., and Acc. Plur., calcaria; Gen. Plur., calcarium; Abl. Sing., calcari.

Callus, -i (m.), also callum, -i (n.), hardened skin.

Canis, -is (c.), a dog. Gen. Plur., canum.

Carbasus, -i (f.), fine flax. (Plur.), carbasa (n.), sails.

Carcer, -eris (m.), a prison. Carceres, -um, a starting point.

Casses, -ium (Pl.), (m.), a snare. Only Abl. in Sing.
Castrum (Sing.), -i (n.), a fort. (Plur.) castra, -orum, a camp.
Chlamys, chlamydis (f.), a cloak. Declined (see p. 177).
Clavis, -is (f.), a key. Acc. Sing., -im or -em. Abl., -i or -e.
Cliens, clientis (c.), a client. Gen. Plur., clientium and clientum.
Ccelebs, ccelibis, unmarried (adj.). Abl. Sing., ccelibe.
Commentarius (m.), also commentarium, -i (n.), a note book.
Compos, compotis (adj.), having the mastery of. Abl. Sing., compote.
Copia, -æ (f.), plenty. (Plur.) copiæ, -arum, forces.
Cupressus, -i, and cupressus, -ūs (f.), a cypress.

(Daps), dapis (f.), a feast. No Nom. or Voc. Sing.
Dea, -æ (f.), a goddess. Dat. and Abl. Plur., deabus.
Delos, Deli (f.), Delos. Irr., declined at full length (see p. 177).
Deses, desidis (adj.), lazy. Abl. Sing., deside.
Deus, dei (m.), a god. Irr., declined at full length (see p. 177).
Dies, diei or diē and dii, a day. Common in Sing., masc. in Plur.
(Ditio), ditionis (f.), a dominion. No Nom. Sing.; no Plur.
Domus, -ūs (f.), a house. Declined (see p. 177).

Echo, echus (f.), echo. The other cases in o. Effigies, effigiei (f.), an image. Has only Nom., Voc., and Acc. in Plur. Epitome, epitomes (f.), an abridgment. Declined (see p. 177). Eventus, -ūs (m.), eventum, -i (n.), an occurrence.

Faber, fabri (m.). Gen. Plur., fabrorum and fabrum.
Facies, faciei (f.), a face. Has only Nom., Voc., and Acc. in Plur.
Fas (n.), Divine law. Indeclinable.
(Faux) (f.) Sing., some times Abl., fauce; Plur., fauces, faucium, etc.

(Faux) (f.) Sing., some times Abl., fauce; Plur., fauces, faucium, etc. Febris, febris (f.), fever. Acc. Sing., febrim and febrem; Abl. Sing., febri and febre.

Feriæ, feriarum (f.), holidays. Has no Sing.

Ficus, -i, and ficus, -ūs (f.), a fig tree.

Fides, fidei (f.), faith. Gen. Sing., fidei, also fide in poets; Dat. Sing., fide in poets, or fidei.

Filia, -æ (f.), a daughter. Dat. and Abl. Plur., filiabus.

Filius, -i (m.), a son. Voc. Sing., fili; Gen. Sing., filii and filf.

Frenum, -i (n.), a bit. Plur. freni (m.), frena (n.).

(Frux), frugis (f.), fruit. Has no Nom.

Grates, thanks (Plur.); usually only in Nom. and Acc. Abl. (Tacitus).

Gratia, -æ (f.), favour; gratiæ, -arum, thanks.
Gravis, -e (adj.), heavy. Nom., Voc., and Acc. Plur. neut., gravia;
Gen. Plur., gravium; Abl. Sing., gravi.
Gener, generi (m.), a son-in-law. Keeps the e in all cases (like puer).
Genius, genii (m.), a genius. Declined like filius.

Glis, gliris (m.), a dormouse. Gen. Plur., glirium.

Hispalis, -is (f.), Seville. Acc. Sing., Hispalim.

Ignis, ignis (m.), fire. Abl. Sing., igni and igne.
Imber, imbris (m.), a shower. Abl. Sing., imbri and imbre.
Impedimentum, -i (n.), a hindrance. Plur., impedimenta, baggage.
Impos, impotis (adj.), not master of. Abl. Sing., impote.
Instar (n.), likeness. Indeclinable.

Jocus, -i (m.), a joke. Plur., joci (m.), joca (n.).
Jugerum, -i (n.), an acre. 2nd declension in Sing., 3rd in Plur. Nom.,
Voc., and Acc. Plur., jugera; Gen. Plur., jugerum; Dat. and Abl.,
jugeribus.
Justitia, -æ (f.), justice. Has no Plural.

Juvenis, -is (m.), a youth. Gen. Plur., juvenum.

Lacus, -ūs (m.), a lake. Dat. and Abl. Plur., lacubus, like acus. Lælius, Lælii (m.), Lælius. Declined like filius.

Laurus, -i (f.), a bay tree, and laurus, -ūs.

Liber, Liberi (m.), Bacchus. Keeps the e in all cases.

Liberi, -orum (m.), children. Has no Sing.

Lis, litis (f.), a law suit. Gen. Plur., litium.

Littera, -æ (f.), a letter (alphabet); litteræ, -arum, an epistle.

Locus, -i (m.), a place; loci (m. Plur.), loca (n. Plur.).

Ludus, -i (m.), play; ludi, -orum, public games.

Luxuria, -æ (f.), luxury; also luxuries, luxuriei.

Mare, maris (n.), the sea. Abl. Sing., mari; neut. Plur., maria.

Mas, maris (m.), a male. Gen. Plur., marium.

Materfamilias (f.), matrisfamiliæ and matrisfamilias, the mother of a family.

Materia, -\pi (f.), timber; and materies, -ei.

Memor, -oris (adj.), mindful. Abl. Sing., memori.

Menda, -\pi (f.), and mendum, -i (n.), a fault.

Mensis, -is (m.), a month. Gen. Plur., mensum or mensium.

Messis, -is (f.), a harvest. Acc. Sing., messem or messim.

Mollitia, -\pi, softness; and mollities, -ei (f.).

Mons, montis (m.), a mountain. Gen. Plur., montium.

Mus, muris (m.), a mouse. Gen. Plur., murium.

Nata, -æ (f.), a daughter. Dat. and Abl. Plur., natabus.

Navis, -is (f.), a ship. Acc. Sing., navim or navem.

Nefas (n.), crime. Indeclinable.

Nihil (n.), nothing. Indeclinable.

Nix, nivis (f.), snow. Gen. Plur., nivium.

Numus and nummus, -i (m.), money. Gen. Plur., numorum and numûm.

Opera, -æ (f.), an exertion; operæ, -arum (m.), workmen. (Ops) opis (f.), strength; opes, opum (Plur.), wealth. Orpheus, Orphei, Orpheos (m.), Orpheus. Declined (see p. 177). Os, ossis (n.), a bone. Gen. Plur., ossium.

Pallas, Palladis or Pallados (f.), Minerva. Declined (see p. 177).

Paris, Paridis or Paridos (m.), Paris. Declined (see p. 177).

Partus, -ūs (m.), a birth. Dat. and Abl. Plur., partubus, like acus.

Paterfamilias, patrisfamiliæ and patrisfamilias (m.), father of a family.

Pauper, pauperis (adj.), poor. Abl. Sing., paupere.

Pecu (-ūs) (n.), cattle. Dat. and Abl. Plur., pecubus, like acus.

Pelagus, -i (n.), the sea. Has no Plural.

Pelvis, -is (f.), a basin. Acc. Sing., pelvim and pelvem.

Pericles, -is and -i (m.), Pericles. Declined at full length (see p. 177).

Pinus, -ūs, and pinus, -i (f.), a pine.

Plebs, plebis, and plebes, -is, -ei (f.), common people.

Portus, -ūs (m.), harbour. Dat., Abl. Plur., portubus and portibus.

(Prex) (precis) (f.), a prayer. Nom. and Gen. Sing. not used.

Princeps, principis (adj.), chief. Abl. Sing., principe.

Prudens, prudentis (adj.), prudent. Abl. Sing., prudenti and prudente;

Nom., Voc., and Acc. Plur. (n.), prudentia.

Pubes and puber, puberis (adj.), adult.

Puer, pueri (m.), a boy. Keeps the e in all cases.

Puppis, is (f.), a ship. Acc. Sing., puppim and puppem. Abl. Sing., puppi and puppe.

Quercus, -ūs (f.), an oak. Dat. and Abl. Plur., quercubus.

Rastrum, -i (f.), a rake. (Plur.) rastri, -orum (m.), rastra, -orum (n.). (Ravis), -is (f.), hoarseness. Acc. Sing., ravim.

Requies, -etis (f.), rest. Acc. Sing., requietem and requiem. Abl. Sing. requiete and requie.

Restis, -is (f.), a rope. Acc., restim or restem. Abl. Sing., reste.

Rostrum, -i (n.), a beak. (Plur.) rostra, -orum, a platform for speaking.

Sappho, -us and -onis (f.), Sappho. Declined at full length (see p. 177). Securis, -is (f.), an axe. Acc. Sing., securim and securem; Abl. Sing., securi.

Sedes, -is (f.), a seat. Gen. Plur., sedum and sedium.

Series (f.), a series. Has only Nom., Acc., and Abl. Sing.

Sibilus, -i (m.), a hissing. (Plur.) sibili and sibila, sibilos and sibila.

Sitis, -is (f.), thirst. Acc. Sing., sitim; has no Plur.

Socer, -ĕri (m.), a father-in-law. Keeps the e in all cases, like puer.

Species, -ei (f.), an appearance. Has only Nom., Voc., and Acc. Plur.

Specus, -ūs (m.), a cave. Dat. and Abl., specubus, like acus.

Spes, spei (f.), hope. Has only Nom., Voc., and Acc. Plur.

(Spons), Abl. sponte (f.), of one's own accord.

Strix, strigis (f.), an owl. Gen. Plur., strigium.

Strues, struis (f.), a heap. Gen. Plur., struum.

Suggestus, -ūs (m.), and suggestum, -i (n.), a platform for speakers.

Supellex, supellectilis (f.), household utensils. Abl., supellectili and -e. Superstes, superstitis (adj.), only surviving. Abl. Sing., superstite.

Sus, suis (c.), a swine. Dat. plur. subus (Lucretius), and suibus.

Tabula, -æ (f.), a board; tabulæ, -arum, writing tablets.

Tartarus, -i (m.), Tartarus. (Plur.) Tartara, -orum (n).

Tenebræ, -arum (f.), darkness. Has no Sing.

Terrigena, -æ (c.), earth born. Gen. Plur., terrigenûm.

Tiberis, -is (m.), the Tiber. Acc. Sing., Tiberim, Tibrim (from Tibris); Abl. Sing., -i.

Tribus, -ūs (f.), a tribe. Dat. and Abl. Plur., tribubus.

Tristis, -e (adj.), sad. Abl. Sing., tristi.

Turris, -is (f.), a tower. Acc. Sing., turrim and turrem; Abl. Sing., turri and turre.

Tussis, -is (f.), a cough. Acc., tussim; Abl. Sing., tussi.

Vas, vasis (n.), a vessel. 3rd dec. in Sing., 2nd in Plur; (Plur.) vasa, vasorum.

Vates, vatis (c.), a prophet. Gen. Plur., vatum.

(Verber), verberis (n.), a stripe. Abl. Sing., verbere; only Gen. and Abl. in Sing., full Plur.

Veru, verus (n.), a spit. Dat. and Abl. Plur., verubus and veribus.

Vesper, vesperis (3) and -eri (2) (m.), the evening. Acc. Sing., vesperum; keeps the e in all cases. Also vespera, - ∞ (f.).

Virus, viri (n.), poison. Has no Plural.

Vis, vis (f.), strength. Acc. Sing., vim; (Plur.) Nom., Voc., and Acc., vires, virium. Gen. and Dat. Sing., very rare.

Volucris, volucris (f.), a bird. Gen. Plur., volucrum.

Vulgus, -i (n.), common people. Has no Plural.

APPENDIX.

Ales, alitis (c.), a bird. Abl. Sing., alite and -e; Gen. Plur., alitum and alituum.

(Cassis, cassis) (m.), a net, snare. Only Abl., casse, in Sing. Full Plural. Grus, gruis (c.), a crane. Nom. Sing., gruis (Phædrus).

Lien, lienis, and lienis, lienis (m.), milt, spleen.

Obex, obicis and objicis (c.), a bolt.

Palus, paludis (f.), a marsh. Gen. Plur., paludum and paludium.

Parens, parentis (c.), a parent. Gen. Plur., parentum and parentium.

Poema, poematis (n.), a poem. Dat. and Abl. Plur., poematis.

Renes, renum (m.), kidneys. Has no Singular.

Sanguis, sanguinis (m.), blood. Has no Plural.

Amnis, a river, Collis, a hill, Fustis, a cudgel, Clunis, a buttock, Finis, a boundary, Postis, a door,

besides those mentioned and many others, have Abl. Sing. in i and e.

THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

The Roman month had three chief days, with reference to which the other days were reckoned.

These days were the Kalends (Kalendæ), which fell on the 1st; the Nones (Nonæ), , , , 5th; the Ides (Idūs), , , 13th.

But in

March, July, October, May, The Nones were on the 7th day,

and the Ides on the 15th, or eight days later.

All other days were counted backwards from these three points; in other words, the Romans did not say such a day after the Kalends, Nones, or Ides, but such a day before these three principal days.

To express a date in Latin observe these rules:

- (a) For days before the Kalends, add two to the number of days in the month, and subtract the day of the month from the result so obtained.
- (b) For days before the Nones and Ides, add one to the day on which they respectively fall, and subtract the day of the month from the result.

E.g.—To express the 16th of January in Latin-

January contains 31 days; add 2 to this, and you have 33. 33-16=17. So that you find January 16th=ante diem septimum decimum Kalendas Februarias; or, as it is usually written, a. d. XVII. Kal. Feb.

To express February 3rd. The Nones fell on the 5th; Add 1, and the result is 6; 6-3=3. Therefore, February 3rd=a. d. III. Non. Feb.

To express May 13th. The Ides of May fell on the 15th; add 1 to this, and you have 16; 16-13=3. Therefore, May 13th=a. d. III. Id. Mai.

To express in Latin the date of a year the ordinal numerals must be used; e.g. A.D. 1885=Anno post Christum natum millesimo octingentesimo octogesimo quinto.

The Kalends, Nones, and Ides of January, etc., will be expressed by Kalendis, Nonis, Idibus, Januariis, etc.; or, briefly, by Kal. Jan.: Non. Jan.: Id. Jan., etc

The day before the Kalends, Nones, and Ides of January, etc., is expressed by Pridie Kalendas, Nonas, Idus, Januarias, etc.; or, briefly, Prid. Kal., Non., Id., Jan.

In leap year February 24 (a. d. VI. Kal. Mart.) was reckoned twice; and the day was called *dies bissextus*, whence the term bissextile, as applied to leap year.*

The Latin names of the months, which are adjectives (agreeing with *mensis*), are Januarius, Februarius, Martius, Aprilis, Maius, Junius, Julius (or Quintilis), Augustus (or Sextilis), September, October, November, December.

Those in -us are declined like bonus; those in -is like tristis; those in -er like acer.

^{*} The intercalated day was counted between a. d. VI. and a. d. VII., and called a. d. bissextum Kal. Mart.; so that a. d. VII. answers as in ordinary years to Feb. 23rd.

ROMAN MONEY.

There were two principal coins, the As (genitive assis) and the Sestertius (a silver coin = $2\frac{1}{2}$ asses), the symbol for which was HS.

The As, or pound of 12 ounces (unciæ), was thus divided:

Uncia 1 oz., or $\frac{1}{12}$ of the As. $\mathbf{2}$ Sextans $\frac{2}{12} = \frac{1}{6}$ Quadrans = 3 $\frac{3}{12} = \frac{1}{4}$,, Triens = 4 $\frac{4}{12} = \frac{1}{3}$ Quincunx = 5 $\frac{5}{12}$ Semis = 6 $\frac{6}{12} = \frac{1}{2}$ Septunx = 7 $,, \frac{7}{12}$ Bes = 8 $\frac{8}{12} = \frac{2}{3}$ Dodrans = 9 $,, \frac{9}{12} = \frac{3}{4}$ Dextans = 10 $\frac{10}{12} = \frac{5}{6}$ Deunx = 11 $,, \frac{1}{1}\frac{1}{2}$

The following terms were used in bequeathing property:

Heres ex asse. Heir to the whole estate.

Heres ex sextante. ,, $\frac{1}{6}$ of the ,, Heres ex besse. ,, $\frac{2}{3}$,, ,,

Etc., etc., etc.

Interest was reckoned monthly at the rate of so much per 100 asses.

Hence

Unciæ usuræ = $\frac{1}{12}$ per cent. per month = 1 per cent. per annum.

Sextantes usuræ = $\frac{1}{6}$ per cent. per month = 2 per cent. per annum.

Quadrantes usuræ = $\frac{1}{4}$ per cent. per month = 3 per cent. per annum.

Asses usuræ = 1 per cent. per month = 12 per cent. per annum.

Instead of asses usuræ we find centesimæ:

The sestertius, or sesterce, as we have said, was a coin.

The sestertium was the name of a sum (= 1,000 sestertii), and is only used in the plural.

Sestertia, HS, joined with Cardinal or Distributive numbers, means so many thousand sesterces.

The Numeral adverbs joined with (or understanding) sestertii (gen. sing.), sestertium, or HS, denote so many 100,000 sesterces.

```
Thus, Tres sestertii
                                                 sesterces.
      Trecenti sestertii
                                       =300
      Mille sestertiûm
                                       =1,000
      Duo millia sestertiûm, or duo } = 2,000
        sestertia
      Decem millia sestertiûm
                                       =10,000
      Centum millia sestertiûm,
      Centena millia sestertiûm
      Centum sestertia
      Ter centena millia sestertiûm,
      Ter sestertiûm
     Decies centena millia sestertiûm, } = 1,000,000
      Decies sestertiûm
                                       =40,000,000,
      Quadringenties sestertiûm
```

Note.—HS.
$$X = Sestertii$$
 decem = 10 sesterces.
HS. $\overline{X} = Sestertia$ decem = 10,000 ,,
 $\overline{HS} = X = Sestertium$ decies = 1,000,000 ,,

PARSING.

There is but little doubt that the generality of teachers, whether at public or private schools, make use of *Parsing* too much as a means of *teaching* the Grammar of a sentence, whereas it should more properly be used simply as a test of what the pupil knows. As also dictation is often improperly used as a means of *teaching* spelling, though it is a most capital exercise and test when the pupil has learned to spell fairly.

Much time is wasted over Parsing. The pupil has to say everything he knows of a word, whether it is Masculine or Feminine, Singular or Plural; and of a Verb, what Conjugation, Voice, Mood, Tense, Number, Person, etc. Careful and diligent teachers boast that they do this with their pupils every day. The pupil no doubt gets up the required form by rote, but half the time does not understand what he is about; and if asked what Gender and why, cannot answer without thinking.

The simplest form of Parsing is the best, as not wearying either to the teacher or the pupil. Below is an example:

Maturus fructus dulcem saporem habet.

Maturus fructus ripe fruit habet has dulcem saporem a sweet taste.

Maturus. Nominative Case, to agree with its substantive fructus.

Fructus. Nominative Case to the verb habet.

Dulcem. Accusative Case, to agree with its substantive saporem.

Saporem. Accusative Case governed by the verb habet.

Habet. Third Person Singular, to agree with its Nominative Case fructus.

This is all that is required to enable a pupil to understand the construction of the sentence.

It is certainly most important that much more than this should be known; but, according to the teaching of this little book, the pupil would know it. He would know as well as his teacher that maturus was an Adjective, Masculine Gender and Singular Number, and declined like bonus, or certainly he would not and could not be doing exercises.

And so with dulcem. If he did not know that dulcem was an Adjective of two terminations, declined like tristis, and that dul-

cem in itself was Masculine or Feminine, but Masculine in this sentence because it has to agree with saporem, he certainly would have to shut his Exercise book and take to his Grammar again.

There must be added a word or two about this Parsing for those who wish to learn Latin by themselves, that they may teach it to others.

- Matūrus is the Nominative Case, simply and for no other reason than that it has to agree with fructus, which is Nominative. Being an Adjective, it has nothing to do with the Verb, or with anything but a Substantive.
- Fructus is the Nominative Case to the verb habet. Habet standing in the sentence must have some Nominative, either expressed or understood; as fructus is a Nominative, then fructus must be taken.
- Dulcem is the Accusative Case—not governed by the Verb, for being an Adjective it has nothing to do with anything but a Substantive; but it is the Accusative Case to agree with saporem, because saporem is the Accusative.
- Saporem is the Accusative Case governed by the verb habet.

 Habet must take some Accusative Case after it—what is it but saporem?
- Habet is the Third Person Singular, to agree with its Nominative Case fructus (or maturus fructus). Habet is the Singular Number because fructus is, and Third Person because every thing and every person but "you" or "I," "you" or "we" is the Third Person.

But were there any idea that the pupil did not know every particular about each word, then each word should be taken, and he should be questioned upon it in every way.

- Saporem.—What Case? Why? What Declension? How do you know the Declension? What Gender? Why?
- Habet.—What Part of Speech? What Voice—Mood—Tense? What Person? Why? What Conjugation? How do you know that it is the Second Conjugation?

But then a pupil taught as by this book would know this, and there would be no need to ask these questions once a month.

ORDER OF LATIN WORDS.

- I. In short Latin sentences the Nominative will come first.

 Pisces extra aquam cito exspirant.

 Fish quickly expire out of the water.
- II. As a general rule, the Verb comes last.
 Milites trans hostium fertiles agros ibant.
 The soldiers were going across the fertile fields of the enemy.
- III. The word governed is generally placed before the word that governs it; as,

Pomum habet, not Habet pomum. Urbis portas clausit, not Portas urbis clausit.

IV. The Possessive Pronoun will usually come after the word it agrees with; as,

Puer librum suum amisit, not Puer suum librum amisit.

V. The Adjective mostly comes after the Substantive with which it agrees; as,

Poeta filiam bonam habet.

VI. This Adjective may however be separated from its Substantive by a Genitive (with its Adjective) depending on that Substantive, in which case it precedes the Genitive; as,

Puer bonam poetæ filiam videt; as also

Puer bonam sapientis poetæ filiam videt.
The boy sees the good daughter of the wise poet.

VII. The Adverb will come generally next before the word to which it belongs; as,

Pisces extra aquam cito exspirant.

VIII. The *Preposition*, as a general rule, *must* come IMME-DIATELY before the word to which it belongs; as in the last sentence,

Pisces extra aquam cito exspirant.

- IX. It may however (see p. 112)
 - (a) Go before the Adjective that agrees with the Substantive; as, Milites trans fertiles agros ibant. Or
 - (b) Before a Genitive depending on that word; as,

 Milites trans hostium fertiles agros ibant.
- X. Conjunctions which join words together must of necessity come between such words; as, Mare et terra.

If que is used instead of et, it will be affixed to the word to which it belongs; as, Mare terramque videt.

If the conjunction join sentences together, it will come between the sentences; as, Multa vidit et plura audivit.

- XI. Autem, enim, vero, quidem, quoque, igitur, may not stand first in the sentence; but namque sed, equidem, ergo, itaque, tamen, may stand first.
- XII. The Interjection will be the first word in the sentence.

There is also another way of telling the proper order for Latin words; viz. according to emphasis. The word which is of first importance is first in the arrangement of words. Hence the emphatic words precede others. The following will at least explain what is meant by the above rule:

- 1. Will you go into the town to-morrow?

 Visne cras in oppidum ire?
- 2. Will you go into the town to-morrow?

 Tune in oppidum cras ire vis?
- 3. Will you go into the town to-morrow?

 Crasne in oppidum ire vis?

RULES OF SYNTAX.

Page 72.

FOUR GENERAL RULES.

LATIN.

A.

Verbum Finitum cum nominativo Subjecti congruit numero et persona. 88. I.

В.

Adjectivum genere, numero, et casu congruit cum eo cui attribuitur. 89. II.

C.

Substantivum casu congruit cum eo cui apponitur. 90. III.

D.

Relativum cum Antecedente congruit, genere, numero, et persona; sed casu spectat suam clausulam. 91. IV. ENGLISH.

Α.

A Verb Finite agrees with the nominative of its Subject in Number and Person. 88. I.

В.

An Adjective agrees in Gender, Number, and Case with that to which it is in attribution. 89. II.

C.

A Substantive agrees in case with that to which it is in apposition. 90. III.

D.

A Relative agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person; but in Case belongs to its own clause. 91. IV.

The Letter or figure at the top of each Rule refers to Syntax, Part II. The figures after each Rule refer to the Public School Latin Primer.

THE VERB AND ITS NOMINATIVE OR SUBJECT.

LATIN.

I.

Finiti Verbi Subjectum Nominativus est. 93. 1.

٧.

Cum Subjecto composito pluralia congruunt. 92.

VI.

In diversitate personarum Verba congruunt cum Priore Persona. 92. 1.

VII.

Infinitivum stat substantive, pro nominativo vel Accusativo. 140. I. 1.

VIII.

Clausulæ pro Substantivis ponuntur. 156 (3).

Englisa.

T.

The Subject of a Finite Verb is a Nominative. 93. 1.

v.

With a composite Subject Plural words agree. 92.

VI.

If the Persons differ, Verbs agree with the Prior Person. 92. 1.

VII.

The Infinitive stands substantively for nominative or Accusative. 140. I. 1.

VIII.

Clauses are put for Substantives. 156 (3).

THE VERB AND ITS ACCUSATIVE OR OBJECT.

Accusativus est Casu Proprioris Objecti. Necnon limitandi vim habet.

T.

Verba Transitiva regunt Accusativum Objecti.

III.

Intransitiva capiunt Accusativum vi cognata. 97.

The Accusative is the Case of the nearer Object. It has also the power of limiting.

I.

Transitive Verbs govern an Accusative of the Object.

III.

Intransitive Verbs take an Accusative of kindred meaning. 97.

THE NOMINATIVE AFTER THE VERB.

Verba Copulativa, sive Finita sive Infinitiva, complementum plerumque cum Subjecto congruens habent. 94. Copulative Verbs, whether Finite or Infinitive, generally have a complement agreeing with the Subject. 94.

This applies also to the Accusative.

THE GENITIVE AFTER THE VERB.

Page 79.

T.

Genitivus ita stat ut suppleri possit,

indoles

munus

officium 127. b.

II.

Interest, refert, Genitivum admittunt. 129. III.

Eadem pro Genitivis Pronominum usurpant hos casus, meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, vestrā, cum rē congruentes. 129. III. a.

III.

Genitivus adjungitur Verbis et Adjectivis quibus significatur—

> Potentia et impotentia. Criminatio, innocentia. Damnatio, absolutio. Memoria et oblivio.

> > 133. II.

IV.

Ex Adjectivis et Verbis abundandi vel egendi, ditandi vel privandi, pleraque Ablativum capiunt, multa etiam Genitivum. 119.IX.b.

٧.

Misereor, miseresco, Genitivum capiunt; miseror, commiseror Accusativum. 135. IV.

VI.

Memini, reminiscor, recordor, obliviscor, Genitivum vel Accusativum admittunt. 133. II. a.

VII.

Piget, pudet, panitet, tædet, atque miseret, Impersonalia, Genitivum capiunt cum Accusativo. 134. III.

I.

A Genitive so stands that nature, token, function, duty, can be supplied. 127. b.

II.

Interest (it imports), refert (it concerns) admit a Genitive. 129. III.

The same verbs, instead of the Genitives of Pronouns, use these cases, meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, vestrā, agreeing with rē. 129. III. a.

III.

A Genitive is joined to Verbs and Adjectives which signify—

Power and impotence.
Inculpation, innocence.
Condemnation, acquittal.
Memory and forgetfulness.
133. II.

IV.

Most Adjectives and Verbs of abounding or wanting, enriching or depriving, take an Ablative; many also a Genitive. 119. IX. b.

v.

Misereor, miseresco (*I pity*), take a Genitive; miseror, commiseror (*I compassionate*), an Accusative. 135. IV.

VI.

Memini, reminiscor, recordor (*I remember*), obliviscor (*I forget*) admit Genitive or Accusative. 133. II. a.

VII.

Piget (it irks), pudet (it shames), pænitet (it repents), tædet (it disgusts), and miseret (it moves pity), Impersonal Verbs, take a Genitive with an Accusative. 134. III.

THE DATIVE AFTER THE VERB.

Pages 80, 81.

LATIN.

Dativus est casus Recipientis seu Remotioris Objecti. 104.

I.

Trajectiva, quæ sensum trajiciunt ad Remotius objectum, sunt multa Adjectiva, Adverbia, et Verba, rarius Substantiva, quibus indicatur:

> Propinquitas et contraria. Demonstratio et contraria. Gratificatio et contraria. Dominatio et contraria.

> > 105. I.

II.

Inter Trajectiva sunt multa Verba composita cum Particulis, quales sunt:

Bene, male, satis, re, Ad, ante, con, in, inter, de, ob, sub, super, post, et præ. 106. a.

III.

Sum, cum compositis, præter possum, capit Dativum. 107. II. b.

IV.

Est, sunt, cum Dativo, habere sæpe significant. 107. II. c.

V.

Dativus Propositi pro complemento ponitur, adjuncto sæpe Dativo Recipientis. 108. III.

ENGLISH.

The Dative is the case of the Recipient or Remoter object. 104.

I.

Words which carry their meaning over to a Remoter Object are called Trajective, and include many Adjectives, Adverbs, and Verbs, more rarely Substantives, by which is implied—

Nearness and its contraries. Demonstration and its contraries. Gratification and its contraries. Dominion and its contraries.

105. I.

II.

Among Trajective words are many Verbs compounded with Particles, such as:

bene, well.
male, ill.
satis, enough.
re, ad, ante, con, in, inter, de, ob,
sub, super, post, et præ.

106. a.

III.

Sum, with its compounds, except possum, takes a Dative. 107. II. b.

IV.

Est, sunt, with a Dative, often imply having. 107. II. c.

٧.

A Dative of the Purpose is used as a complement, a Dative of the Recipient being often added. 108. III.

THE ABLATIVE AFTER THE VERB.

Page 81.

LATIN.

I.

Ablativum regunt:

(1) Verba

fungor, fruor, utor, vescor, potior, dignor.

- * (2) Adjectiva
 dignus, indignus,
 contentus, fretus,
 præditus.
- * (3) Substantiva, opus, usus. 119. IX. a.

II.

Ex Adjectivis et Verbis abundandi vel egendi, ditandi vel privandi, pleraque Ablativum capiunt, multa etiam Genitivum. 119. b.

III.

Præpositiones etiam compositæ regunt Ablativum, præsertim ab, de, ex. 122. XII. a.

ENGLISH.

I.

These words govern an Ablative:

- (1) The Verbs:
 Fungor, to perform.
 Fruor, to enjoy.
 Utor, to use.
 Vescor, to eat.
 Potior, get possession of.
 Dignor, deem worthy.
- (2) The Adjectives:
 Dignus, worthy.
 Indignus, unworthy.
 Contentus, content.
 Fretus, relying.
 Præditus, endued.
- (3) The Substantives: Opus, need. Usus, use.

119. IX. a.

II.

Most Adjectives and Verbs of abounding or wanting, enriching or depriving, take an Ablative; many also a Genitive. 119. b.

III.

Prepositions, even when compounded, govern an Ablative, especially ab, de, ex. 122. XII. a.

 $^{\ ^{\}bullet}$ It has been thought convenient to place the Adjectives and the Substantives here to make the rule complete.

VERBS WHICH TAKE TWO CASES.

Page 82.

ACCUSATIVE AND GENITIVE.

LATIN.

T.

Genitivus adjungitur Verbis et Adjectivis quibus significatur:

Potentia et impotentia.
Criminatio, innocentia.
Damnatio, absolutio.
Memoria et oblivia.

133. II.

II.

Piget, pudet, pænitet, tædet, atque miseret, Impersonalia, Genitivum capiunt cum Accusativo.

134. III.

ENGLISH.

I.

A Genitive is joined to Verbs and Adjectives which signify:

Power and impotence.
Inculpation, innocence.
Condemnation, acquittal.
Memory and forgetfulness.
133. II.

II.

Piget (it irks), pudet (it shames), pointet (it repents), twelet (it disgusts), miseret (it moves pity), Impersonal verbs, take a Genitive with an Accusative.—134. III.

The above do not necessarily always take two cases.

ACCUSATIVE AND DATIVE.

Trajectiva quæ sensum trajiciunt ad Remotius Objectum, sunt multa Adjectiva, Adverbia, etverba, rarius Substantiva, quibus indicatur:

Propinquitas et contraria. Demonstratio et contraria. Gratificatio et contraria. Dominatio et contraria.

105, I.

Words which carry their meaning over to a Remote Object are called Trajective, and include many Adjectives, Adverbs, and Verbs, more rarely Substantives, by which is implied:

Nearness and its contraries. Demonstration and its contraries. Gratification and its contraries. Dominion and its contraries.

105, I.

The above do not necessarily always take two cases.

VERBS WHICH TAKE EITHER OF TWO CASES.

Page 83.

GENITIVE OR ACCUSATIVE.

LATIN.

Memini, reminiscor, recordor, Genitivum vel Accusativum admittunt. 133. II. a.

ENGLISH.

Memini, reminiscor, recordor (I remember), obliviscor (I forget), admit Genitive or Accusative. II. a.

GENITIVE OR ABLATIVE.

Ex Adjectivis et Verbis abundandi vel egendi, ditandi vel pri-

Most Adjectives and Verbs of abounding or wanting, enriching or depriving, take an Ablative; vandi, pleraque Ablative capiunt, or depriving, take an Ablative; multa etiam Genitivum. 119. IX. b. many also a Genitive. 119. IX. b.

VERBS WHICH TAKE A DOUBLE CASE.

Page 83.

Two Accusatives-Person and Thing.

I.

Verba quædam, rogandi præsertim et docendi, binos admittunt Accusativos, alterum Rei, alterum Personæ.—98.

I.

Some Verbs, especially those of asking and teaching, admit two Accusatives, one of the thing, the other of the Person.-98.

Two Accusatives—Object and Complement.

I.

Verba quædam faciendi, vocandi, putandi, similia, binos habent Accusativos, alterum Objecti, alterum Obliqui Complementi.—99.

I.

* Certain Verbs, of making, calling, thinking, and the like, have two Accusatives, one of the Object, the other of the Oblique Complement.—99.

Two Datives-Sum with other Words.

T.

Dativus Propositi pro Complemento ponitur, adjuncto sæpe Dativo Recipientis.—108. III.

I.

A Dative of the Purpose is used as a Complement, a Dative of the Recipient being often added. 108. III.

* These are called Factitive Verbs.

ADJECTIVES AND THEIR CASES.

Pages 84, 85.

GENITIVE AFTER THE ADJECTIVE.

LATIN.

Genitivus Rei Demensæ Vocabula Quantitatis et Neutra Adjectiva comitatur.—131. B.

II.

Genitivus objective jungitur Substantivis, Adjectivis, aut Participiis, quibus transitiva quædam vis est, præsertim si significant:

Peritiam, curam, desiderium. Vel quidquid erit his contrarium. 132. I.

Genitivus adjungitur Verbis et Adjectivis quibus significantur:

> Potentia et impotentia. Criminatio, innocentia. Damnatio, absolutio. Memoria et oblivio. 133. II.

ENGLISH.

A Genitive of the Thing Measured is joined to Words of Quantity and Neuter Adjectives.—131. B.

II.

A Genitive is joined objectively to Substantives, Adjectives, or Participles if they signify skill, care, desire, or whatever is contrary to these.—132. I.

A Genitive is joined to Verbs and Adjectives which signify:

Power and impotence.
Inculpation, innocence.
Condemnation, acquittal.
Memory and forgetfulness. 133. II.

DATIVE AFTER THE ADJECTIVE.

Trajectiva capiunt Dativum, quum significatur:

(1) Propinquitas; (2) Demonstratio; (3) Gratificatio; (4) Dominatio; et contraria. 106.

Trajective Words take a Dative when the meanings implied are:

(1) Nearness; (2) Demonstration; (3) Gratification; (4) Dominion; and their contraries. 106.

THE ABLATIVE AFTER THE ADJECTIVE.

I.

Ablativum regunt: Adjectiva dignus, indignus, contentus, fretus, præditus.

119. IX. a. 2.

I.

These words govern an Ablative: The Adjectives dignus (worthy), indignus (unworthy), contentus (content), fretus (relying), præditus (endued).—119. IX. a. 2.

II.

Ex Adjectivis et Verbis abundandi vel egendi, ditandi vel privandi, pleraque Ablativum capiunt, multa etiam Genitivum.—119. b.

II.

Most Adjectives and Verbs of abounding or wanting, enriching or depriving, take an Ablative; many also a Genitive.—119. b.

Also the Substantives opus and usus take an Ablative. 119. IX. a. 3.

DIFFERENT USES OF CASES.

Page 86.

*** These "different uses of Cases" are not intended to include the Case after the Verb or Adjective, which has been already given.

NOMINATIVE.

LATIN.

T.

Finiti Verbi Subjectum Nominativus est.—93. 1.

II.

Substantivum casu congruit cum eo cui apponitur.—90.

ш.

Nominativus et Accusativus in exclamando usurpantur vel sine Interjectione vel cum Interjectione. 138.

IV.

Quam cum Nominativo.

124. XIV. 1.

ENGLISH.

I.

The Subject of a Finite Verb is a Nominative.—93. 1.

II.

A Substantive agrees in case with that to which it is Apposition.

TIT.

The Nominative and the Accusative are used in Exclamations either without an Interjection or with an Interjection.—138.

IV.

Quam with Nominative.

124. XIV. 1.

VOCATIVE.

Vocativus extra sententiam stat vel sine Interjectione vel cum Interjectione.—137. The Vocative stands out of the sentence either without an Interjection or with an Interjection.

137.

ACCUSATIVE.

Pages 86, 87.

LATIN.

I.

Infinitivi Subjectum in Accusativo ponitur.—93. 2.

II

Substantivum casu congruit cum eo cui apponitur.—90. III.

III.

Accusativus Respectus adjungitur Verbis et Adjectivis, præsertim apud poetas.—100.

IV

Nominativus et Accusativus in Exclamando usurpantur vel sine Interjectione vel cum Interjectione. 138.

v.

Duratio Temporis in Accusativo ponitur.—102. 1.

VI.

Mensura Spatii in Accusativo ponitur.—102, 2.

VII.

Accusativum regunt multæ Præpositiones.—103.

VIII.

Locus, quo itur, in Accusativo ponitur, idque sine Præpositione, si vel oppidi nomen est, vel domus, rus.—101.

IX.

Quam cum Accusativo. 124. XIV. 2. ENGLISH.

T.

The Subject of an Infinitive is put in the Accusative.—93. 2.

II.

A Substantive agrees in case with that to which it is in Apposition.—90. III.

III.

The Accusative of Respect is joined to Verbs and Adjectives, especially in poetry.—100.

IV.

The Nominative and the Accusative are used in Exclamations either without an Interjection or with an Interjection.—138.

V.

The Duration of Time is put in the Accusative.—102. 1.

VI.

The Measure of Space is put in the Accusative.—102. 2.

VII.

Many Prepositions govern an Accusative Case.—103.

VIII.

The place, whither one goes, is put in the Accusative; and without a Preposition, if it is either the name of a town, or domus (home), rus (country).—101.

IX.

Quam with the Accusative. 124, 2.

GENITIVE. Page 87.

LATIN.

I.

Genitivus Auctoris et Possessoris. 127. I.

II.

Substantivum casu, etc.

III.

Genitivus qualitatis, cum epitheto.—128. II.

IV.

Notentur elliptici Genitivi:

parvi minoris minimi magni pluris plurimi tanti quanti maximi

quibus supple pretii.

128. II. a.

ENGLISH.

I.

Genitive of the Author and Possessor.—127. I.

II.

A Substantive agrees in case etc.—90 III.

III.

Genitive of quality with epithet. 128. II.

IV.

The elliptic Genitives may be remarked:

Parvi, of small worth; minoris, of less value; minimi, of very little worth. Magni, of great price; pluris, of more value; plurimi, of high value. Tanti, of so great price; quanti, of what price; maximi, of very great price. To which supply pretii. 128. II. a.

DATIVE. Page 87.

T.

Substantivum casu, etc.

II.

Ita Dativus ponitur cum hei!

I.
A Substantive agrees in case, etc.

TT.

So the Dative is put with hei, (alas!) væ (woe!)—139.

ABLATIVE. Page 88.

I.

Substantivum casu, etc.

II.

Ablativus Rei Comparatæ:

(1) Pro quam cum Nominativo.(2) Pro quam cum Accusativo.

124. XIV.

Multæ Præpositiones Ablativum regunt.—122. XII. (See list.)

IV.

Ablativus Agentis expetit Præpositionem a, ab.—122. XII. b.

I.
A Substantive agrees in case, etc.

TT

Ablative of the Thing Compared:

(1) For quam with Nom.

(2) For quam with Acc.

124. XIV.

Many Prepositions govern an Ablative.—122. XII. (See list.)

IV.

The Ablative of the Agent takes the Preposition a, ab. 122. XII. b.

LATIN.

V.

Ablativus est Casus rerum quæ circumstant et adverbiali more limitant actionem. Definit etiam Tempus et Locum .- 110.

V. Ablativus Causæ.

VI. Ablativus Instrumenti.

VII. Ablativus Modi.

VIII. Ablativus Conditionis.

IX. Ablativus Qualitatis, cum Epitheto.

X. Ablativus Respectus.

XI. Ablativus Pretii.

XII. Ablativus Mensuræ. XIII. Ablativus Materiæ.

111-119.

XIV.

Ablativus Temporis respondet, si rogatur, Quando? Intra quantum tempus? Quanto tempore ante vel post ?-120. X.

XV.

Oppidorum nomina singularia ex Declinatione prima et secunda locum stationis definiunt per casus in æ, i.—121. XII. a.

XVI.

Ablativus oppidi Præpositione caret, cum rogatur Unde ?

Ita domo, rure.

121. XI. C.

XVII.

Ablativus Loci ponitur sine Præpositione, cum rogatur, qua via ?-121. XI. A.

XVIII.

Substantivum cum Participio coalescit in Ablativo, qui vocatur Absolutus.—125, XV.

ENGLISH.

V.

The Ablative is the Case of circumstances which attend action, and limit it adverbially. It defines also time and space.—110.

V. Ablative of Cause.

VI. Ablative of the Instrument.

VII. Ablative of Manner.

VIII. Ablative of Condition.

IX. Ablative of Quality with Epithet.

X. Ablative of Respect.

XI. Ablative of Price.

XII. Ablative of Measure. XIII. Ablative of Matter.

111-119.

XIV.

The Ablative of Time answers the questions, When? Within what time? How long before or after?—120. X.

XV.

Singular names of towns of the first and second Declension define the place of station by cases in æ, i.—121. XII. a.

XVI.

The Ablative of a town is without a Preposition, when the question is Whence?

So domo (from home). rure (from the country). 121. XĬ. C.

XVII.

The Ablative of Place is put without a Preposition when the question is By what road ?

121. XI. A.

XVIII.

A Substantive combines with a Participle in the Ablative which is called Absolute.—125. XV.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Page 94.

LATIN.

T.

Infinitivi Casus sunt Gerundia et Supina. 141. II.

II.

Infinitivum, cum Gerundio, Participiis, et Supino in *um*, eosdem casus regit ac Verbum Finitum. 142. III.

III.

Infinitivum stat — substantive, pro Nominativo vel Accusativo. 140. I. (1).

IV.

Infinitivum stat — oblique, cum Accusativo Subjecti. 140. I. (3).

٧.

Infinitivum stat — prædicative, in narrando, pro Verbo Finito. 140. I. (2).

VI.

Infinitivum stat—prolata constructione Verbi vel Adjectivi. 140. I. (4).

ENGLISH.

I.

Gerunds and Supines are the Cases of the Infinitive. 141. II.

II.

The Infinitive, with Gerund, Participles, and Supine in *um*, governs the same Cases as the Verb Finite. 142. III.

III.

The Infinitive stands—substantively, for Nominative or Accusative. 140. I. (1).

IV.

The Infinitive stands—obliquely, with Accusative of the Subject. 140. I. (3).

v.

The Infinitive stands—Predicatively, in narration, for a Finite Verb. 140. I. (2).

VI.

The Infinitive stands—carrying on the construction of Verb or Adjective. 140. I. (4).

GERUNDS.

Page 95.

LATIN.

III.

Accusativus Gerundii Præposinonibus adjungitur. 141. II. (1).

IV.

Genitivus Gerundii Substantivis et Adjectivis additur. 141. II. (2).

٧.

Dativus Gerundii Nominibus et Verbis additur. 141. II. (3).

VI.

Ablativus Gerundii causæ vel modi est aut Præpositioni jungitur. 141. II. (4). ENGLISH.

III.

The Accusative of the Gerund is joined to Prepositions. 141. II. (1).

IV.

The Genitive of the Gerund is joined to Substantives and Adjectives. 141. II. (2).

٧.

The Dative of the Gerund is joined to Nouns and Verbs. 141. II. (3).

VI.

The Ablative of the Gerund is of cause or manner, or is joined to a Preposition. 141. II. (4).

SUPINES.

II.

Supinum in um Accusativus est post Verba motus. 141. II. (5).

Iri cum Supino efficit Infinitivum futuri Passivi. 141. II. (5). a.

III.

Supinum in u pro Ablativo Respectus est. 141. II. (6).

II.

The Supine in um is an Accusative after Verbs of motion. 141. II. (5).

Iri with the Supine forms the Infinitive of the Future Passive.

141. II. (5). a.

III.

The Supine in u is for an Ablative of respect. 141. II. (6).

RULES NOT ARRANGED IN THEIR PROPER ORDER.

GERUNDIVE ATTRACTION.

I.

In Gerundiis Transitivis usitatior est Attractio Gerundiva; cujus constructionis regula est hæcce:

Trahitur Objectum in Gerundivi casum, Gerundivum in numerum et genus Objecti. 143.

I.

In Transitive Gerunds the Gerundive Attraction is more usual; the rule for which construction is the following:

The Object is attracted to the case of the Gerundive, the Gerundive to the Number and Gender of the Object. 143.

PARTITIVE GENITIVE.

Genitivus Rei Distributæ Partitivis adjungitur, quæ, quantum licet, Genitivi sumunt genus. 130. IV. A Genitive of the Thing Distributed is joined to Partitive words, which, as far as may be, take the Gender of the Genitive.

ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION.

Ablativus Separationis et Originis etiam sine Præpositione Verbis et Participiis adjungitur. 123. XIII. The Ablative of Separation and Origin is joined also with a Preposition to Verbs and Participles. 123. XIII.

THE END.

Price 2s. 6d.

By the Same Author.

In the Press.

EASY EXERCISES FOR BEGINNERS,

AS A

COMPANION VOLUME

TO

NEW EASY LATIN PRIMER.

BY THE SAME AUTHOR.

Ninth Edition. 12mo. Price 1s. 6d. Cloth.

A SHORT AND EASY LATIN BOOK.

A SHORT AND EASY LATIN BOOK

Fourth Edition. 12mo. Price 3s. 6d. Cloth.

A FIRST EASY LATIN READING BOOK.

Third Edition. 12mo. Price 3s. 6d. Cloth.

A SECOND EASY LATIN READING BOOK.

Fifth Edition. 12mo. Price 2s. 6d. Cloth.

A SHORT AND EASY GREEK BOOK.

Second Edition. 12mo. Price 5s. Cloth.

A FIRST EASY GREEK READING BOOK.

12mo. Price 5s. Cloth.

A SECOND EASY GREEK READING BOOK.

Third Edition. 12mo. Price 1s. 6d. Cloth.

FIRST GREEK READER FOR USE AT ETON.

Drawn up at the request of the Lower Master of Eton College, and now in use at Eton, Harrow, Merchant Taylors', etc.

12mo. Price 2s.

FIRST BOOK OF HOMER'S ILIAD.

In graduated lessons, with full notes and vocabularies.

Just Published, 12mo, Price 2s. 6d. Cloth,

SELECTIONS FROM THE LATIN AUTHORS.

PROSE AND VERSE.

In Separate Parts. Price 1s. 6d.

[&]quot;Few living classical scholars have done so much or nearly so much as Mr. Fowns has done to smooth the way of the classical scholar by a series of elementary works, which for accuracy in detail and perfection of method, as well as practical utility, are, as a whole, unsurpassed by similar works in this country. The present volume ('Selections from the Best Latin Authors') was commenced years ago, and the delay ought to be forgiven on account of the excellence of the work now that it is completed. Before pointing out in detail the excellences of this most useful and charming book we venture to express our regret that its value is somewhat lessened in our opinion by the want of order which pervades it. The divisions made are simply two, prose and poetry. The prose begins with Eutropius and ends with Tacius, and the poetry begins with Catullus and ends with Martial. At the end of the prose selections, as well as at the end of the poetry selections, the editors give their 'Helps for Construing,' which are helps in reality as well as in name. Their tone is scholarly and thorough, and no real difficulty, either in the text of the author or in his allusions, is shirked. We can scarcely conceive a work more capable of introducing a student to the profitable reading and study of the Latin authors' prose and verse than this admirable and scholarly work of Messrs. Fowns and Whitaker. We may add that it contains a short but the best summary of Latin writers we have seen anywhere.'—School Board Chronicle.

T.

SIMPLE SENTENCES.

FIRST SERIES.

For translation into Latin and English.

Price 6d.; free by post 7d.

II.

SIMPLE SENTENCES.

SECOND SERIES.

For Translation into English.

Price 1s.; free by post 1s. 2d.

III.

A SHORT ACCOUNT OF SOME OF THE GODS AND HEROES OF ANTIQUITY.

For schools and families. 68 pages.

Price 1s.; free by post 1s. 2d.

IV.

GEOGRAPHY MANUALS.

4d. each. 16 pages.

1. Introductory PART I. 3. Water PART III. 2. Land PART III. 4. England & Wales PART IV.

THE SATURDAY REVIEW

March 27th, 1875.

SOME STEPPING-STONES TO SCHOLARSHIP.*

"In the interest of both parents and pupils, we think it right to draw attention to two or three succinct and well-considered aids to the attainment of classical know-ledge, in the way of grammar, composition, and collateral matters, which now lie

on our table.

"Of these we place in the first rank two volumes differing in grade and scope,

"Of these we place in the first rank two volumes differing in grade and scope, yet of the same practical character, excellently fitted, the one for grade and scope, yet of the same practical character, excellently fitted, the one for grounding the merest tyro, the other for giving him, when grounded, an insight into the principles and philosophy of the grammar he has laid in by rote. The first is A Short and Easy Greek Book, by Mr. Envund Fowns; the other an annotated Greek Accidence, by Mr. Evelyn Abbott, now a tutor, we believe, at Balliol; and it has seldom been our fortune to light upon Greek grammars in which economy and retrenchment of space went so thoroughly along with lucidity and solidity of information. Mr. Fowne's book, indeed, combining grammar, exercises, and vocabulary in the space of one hundred and forty pages, distinctly aims at not only being, but also (which of the number and though it may appear paradoxical to say so) at seeming to the learner's eye as easy as possible. To this end each subject has been confined to one, or at most two, pages, and a vast amount of thought and pains has been bestowed upon such arrangements of declensions, division of a declension, tenses, and tables of verbs as obviate wearisome repetition, and establish a sequence readily appreciable by the learner. A further recommendation is that Mr. Fowle's book runs in the lines of Wordsworth's Greek Grammar, and, in a less degree, in those of Mr. St. John Parry's, one or other of which is in use at most of our larger schools. And, St. John Parry's, one or other of which is in use at most of our larger schools. And, though the nature of the Short and Easy Greek Book peremptorily excludes philological and philosophical explanations, which the pupils for whom it is designed would be certain to ignore, it is remarkable how seldom we have been able to trace the slightest omission of essential matter, and how often an impression is produced that the author has weighed with nicety the claims of this or that detail to be included as of vital elementary importance. . Yet Mr. Abbott's aim and object is also simplification. . When we come to the declensions of substantives, both writers are found practically limiting these to three, with a division of a third into five classes, and Mr. Fowle has laudably simplified the intricacies of the vocative singular and dative plural of this last by a few simple rules. . . "In a note to his compendious account of the comparison of adjectives, Mr. Fowle

"In a note to his compendious account of the comparison of adjectives, Mr. Fowle makes a reservation that 'this formation of comparatives and superlatives is only given for the sake of learning the language, and that it is not to be supposed that it represents the original growth of the words; and so elsewhere he distinguishes between the easy way for beginners and the more philosophical way, as regards forming the tenses. . . . We may add that a great enhancement of the usefulness of Mr. Fowle's manual is that it contains a series of simple and progressive ness of Mr. Fowks simulatis that it contains a series of simple and progressive exercises upon the steps of grammar as the pupil masters them, thus superseding the necessity of a 'Delectus,' and insuring the pupil's safe footing as he goes forward. Similar praise may be bestowed on his Short and Easy Latin Book and his two graduated Latin Readers, leading the pupil up to selected passages of Cæsar, Ovid, and Virgil. His constant attention to the abridgment of labour, and the acquirement of aptness in translation by progressive vocabularies and pertinent footnotes, shows a clear sense of his mission as an instructor," etc., etc., etc., etc., etc.

^{*} A Short and Easy Greek Book. By Rev. Edmund Fowle. Longmans. 1874. The Elements of the Greek Accidence, with Philological Notes. By Evelyn Abbott, M.A., of Balliol College, Oxford. Rivingtons. 1874.

A Short and Easy Latin Book. Fourth Edition. 1873. A First Easy Latin Reading Book. Second Edition. 1874. A Second Easy Latin Reading Book. 1873. By Rev. Edmund Fowle. Longmans.

REVIEWS OF THE LATIN AND GREEK BOOKS.

"It is no exaggeration of Mr. Fowle's merits as an educational author to say that, since the days of Dr. Kerchever Arnold, no such advance has been made in the quality and usefulness of classical school books as that achieved by Mr. Fowle in the easy series of Latin and Greek manuals which he has published. It was our lot to be the very first to recognise the great and special merit of these works, and we are glad to see," etc., etc.—School Board Chronicle.

"The grand and distinctive merit of these books is the admirable skill with which the author has carefully excluded all the more difficult and advanced matters, and yet has prepared the way for their later acquirement. This faculty of exclusion and simplification amounts almost to genius. It requires no little skill to confine every subject within the limit of one or, at the most, two pages, and at the same time to prepare the pupil for the study of larger and more comprehensive treatises, by a perfectly natural and easy growth; and yet this has been achieved by Mr. Fowle with perfect and uncerting skill."—The Schoolmaster.

"It is impossible to speak in terms of too high satisfaction of Mr. Edmund Fowle's 'First Easy Latin Reading Book." —John Bull.

"Among those who have lately published excellent working methods for elementary teaching, one of the highest places ought to be reserved for Mr. FOWLE. His little book is one of the most striking instances we could find of a thoughtful adult mind making the way easy for the young learner. It is always dangerous to assert an absolute superlative; but it seems to us that this little Latin Reading Book for beginners is one of the best that has ever come into our hands."—QUARTERIX JOURNAL OF EDUCATION.

"The Rev. EDMUND FOWLE'S 'Second Easy Latin Reading Book'

(Longmans') carries a step farther the plan of elementary teaching so ably sketched out in his 'Short and Rasy Latin Book,' and 'First Easy Latin Reading Book.' Everything, however simple, that the pupil ought to know, is put before him in the plainest and most direct language."—GUARDIAN.

"It is a common complaint amongst tutors that there is a great want of good elementary Greek books. We do not think they have any further ground of dissatisfaction since the appearance of Mr. Fowle's most admirable manual."—Oxford Undergendards Journal.

"Mr. Fowle's earlier educational works have been noticed in our columns with well-merited praise. The volume before us lacks nothing of the striking excellences which marked its valuable predecessors. It is simple in the extreme, very gradual in its steps, clear in expresion, and shirks no difficulty. The passages selected are from the purest models of the purest Latinity."—Schoolboaed Chronicle.

"The same good work which the Rev. Edmund Fowle has done for beginners in Latin by his 'Short and Easy Latin Book' he has now performed for those beginning Greek, in his companion volume, 'A Short and Easy Greek Book.' The arrangement is excellent, and there is the same simplicity and adaptation to the special difficulties of beginners which made Mr. Fowler's previous work so great a success."—John Bull.

"The early study of the Greek and we think any boy fortunate who has such sedulous care given as is here shown to help him over them. It must be a very idle or a hopelessly stupid boy whom such a system as this would not bring, as old Lily said, 'past the wearisome bitterness of his learning."—LITE-EARY CHURCHMAN.

REVIEWS OF THE LATIN AND GREEK BOOKS-continued.

"This very easy and carefully selected reading book is framed on the model of the author's Latin Reading Book, which we have commended so cordially in our columns. We speak our fullest conviction of the merits of the work when we declare it to be by far the easiest and most useful introduction to Greek when a pupil has once mastered the rudiments of his Greek Grammar."—EVENING STANDARD.

"The author of these books, who is a classical scholar of high attainments, has performed a difficult and important task with complete success, . . and too much cannot be said in praise of his work. While his books are free from the defects of works of a similar kind, they are marked by striking excellences."—WORESTER JOUENAL

"They remain now, as when they were published—the simplest and, in our opinion, the most effective of any classical primer we know."—LITE-BABY CHURCHMAN.

"The study of language is no easy matter, . . . but some teachers have the gift to lighten the student's labour; and such a man is Mr. Fowle, who has the ability to clear away difficulties, and thereby smooth the way to the attainment of a thorough knowledge of a language. No one but a practical teacher could do what the author has done and in this respect his Greek Book

is quite as easy as his Latin."— Brighton Gazette.

"It has seldom been our fortune to light upon a Greek Grammar in which economy and retrenchment of space went so thoroughly along with lucidity and solidity of information. . . . A vast amount of thought and pains has been bestowed upon such arrangements of declensions, divisions of a declension, tenses, and tables of verbs, as obviate wearisome repetition and establish a sequence appreciable by the learner,"—Saturbay Review.

"We have examined these books in a somewhat sceptical spirit, fancying that amid the shoals of books of a similar character issuing daily from the press there could be no possible ground for granting them even a conditional welcome: but Mr. Fowle has converted our scepticism into something like a well-assured and hopeful faith. The first of the two contains a very concise grammar, chiefly valuable for what it does not contain, and at the same time ingeniously putting the information it does contain in the form most adapted for comprehension and retention by the youthful pupil; and this grammar is followed up by some very easy exercises, admirably adapted to the slow and painful steps which can be taken by the child. The book reveals on every page the experience of one who has not only worked with children, but felt for them."—Schoolnaster.

12mo, cloth, price 2s.; free by post 2s. 2d. Cheaper Edition, boards, 1s., free by post, 1s. 2d.

THE

SCHOOLBOY'S FIRST BOOK

OF

EASY POETRY.

EXTRACT FROM PREFACE.

Mr objection to nearly all those Books of Poetry which have fallen into my hands is, that there are so few pieces suitable for children, from nine to fourteen years of age, to commit to memory—some are too easy, and some too difficult. I believe that all the pieces in the present selection are of very nearly the same difficulty—not childish, I hope, but at the same time simple in the matter and in the versification.

Another objection to nearly all the selections I have seen is that they contain the same stock pieces—very pretty many of them, and very suitable, but too well known for me to care to give them in my Book. I append a list of many such pieces which will not be found in the present publication.

The present book would not do, certainly, to be the only Poetry Book in use in a school, or the younger generation would grow up without knowing many of our old favourites; it is therefore not intended to take the place of books now in general use, but to supplement them.

SIXPENNY SCRIPTURE MANUALS.

I.

A SHORT BIBLE HISTORY, For Schools and Families.

IT.

THE WANDERINGS OF THE ISRAELITES:
Settlement in Canaan, Government by Judges, etc.
Life of Saul, David, and Solomon.

III.

THE KINGS OF JUDAH AND ISRAEL.

In Parallel Columns.

IV.

SHORT PAPERS ON JEWISH HISTORY.

Giving in connected form the times after the Captivity down to the destruction of Jerusalem.

V.

THE ACTS OF THE APOSTLES.

Dealing chiefly with the Travels of S. Paul.

All the above neatly and tastefully bound in cloth, and uniform in size and price.

6d.; free by post 7d.

THE GOSPELS,

HARMONIZED AND ARRANGED IN SHORT READINGS,

Has now been brought out in six separate parts, as

"THE LIFE OF CHRIST,"

In the Author's "Sixpenny Scripture Manuals."

Price 6d. each; free by post 7d.

The Literary Review says:

"The idea which suggested the arrangement of the Gospels observed in this book was a very happy inspiration on the part of the industrious editor. The whole work is worthy of the very highest commendation. It will be found most useful by the masters and teachers of schools of all grades, either as a class reading book or for personal use; and for the clergy and students generally, it will prove invaluable as a work of reference."

The School Guardian says:

"Mr. Fowle has the happy art of producing books that are useable, books that one can teach from. Himself a teacher, he has found by experience vohat boys can learn, how they can learn, and how far it is expedient that their teacher should help them, or how far the books they use should be suggestive of help. He has utilised this insight in the preparation of the Gospels Harmonized, and has succeeded, perhaps as far as any one ever can, in harmonizing the facts and dates of the four evangelical narratives. We think it will make a capital class-book for the better kind of schools, and will be, as it is designed to be, exceedingly useful to teachers, pupil teachers, and for family reading."

Price 6d.; free by post, $6\frac{1}{2}$ d.

HELP TO DEVOTION.

This is a little Book of Meditation, most tastefully got up, with cloth case for the pocket.

There are two separate editions-

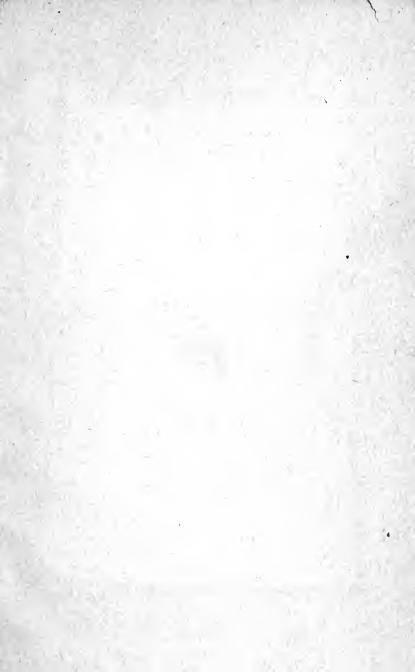
- (1) FOR BOYS AT HOME OR AT SCHOOL.
- (2) FOR THOSE LATELY CONFIRMED.

A well-known Literary Clergyman writes: "Many thanks for your attractive-looking and really useful manual for confirmation candidates; kindly send me thirty copies." Others write: "It is one in a thousand. I turned over all - stock last year. and saw nothing equal to it." "It is really a well thought out little matter." "Very many thanks for the little manual so carefully compiled and so beautifully got up." "Send six copies. I like them much, and wish to give them to my confirmation candidates." "Many thanks for your extremely good little Book of Meditations; I am greatly pleased with it. Can they be had by the dozen at any abatement, for distribution in a Parish?" Three Head Masters of Public Schools write: "I thank you very much for the charming little book which you inclosed. Are they published?" "I like it exceedingly, and if you will send me twenty copies I shall be glad to give them to some of our nuper confirmati." "Thanks for the other attractive-looking little gift. I will draw my masters' attention to it." A London publisher writes: "It is a perfect little gem."

TO BE HAD AT PRESENT ONLY OF REV. EDMUND FOWLE, AMESBURY HOUSE, BICKLEY, KENT.

Twelve or more copies sent post free.

6





7627

University of Toronto Library

DO NOT
REMOVE
THE
CARD
FROM
THIS
POCKET

laL.Gr 7853n

Fowle, Edmund
A new easy Latin primer,

Acme Library Card Pocket LOWE-MARTIN CO. LIMITED

